



bv-Control[®] for Windows[®]



Policy Compliance Vulnerability Management Directory Administration & Migration



bv-Control_® for Windows_® v8.00

User Guide

BindView Corporation · 5151 San Felipe, Suite 2500 · Houston, TX 77056

COPYRIGHT

Copyright © 1996-2004 BindView Corporation. All rights reserved. BindView Corporation is a business name of BindView Development Corporation. Information in this document is subject to change and revision without notice. The software described herein may only be used and copied as outlined in the Software License Agreement. No part of this manual may be reproduced by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use, without prior written permission from BindView Corporation. BINDVIEW CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS DOCUMENTATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL BINDVIEW CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF USE OR DATA, INTERRUPTION OF BUSINESS, OR FOR DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, EVEN IF BINDVIEW CORPORATION HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES ARISING FROM ANY DEFECT OR ERROR IN THIS DOCUMENTATION.

BindView Corporation may revise this publication from time to time without notice. Because some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of liability for consequential or incidental damages, the above limitations may not apply. BindView Corporation's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever, and regardless of the form of the action (whether in contract, tort (including negligence), product liability or otherwise) will be limited to \$50.00 U.S.

TRADEMARK NOTES

BindView, the BindView logo, and the BindView product names used in this document are trademarks of BindView Corporation and may be registered in one or more jurisdictions.

The names of products of other companies mentioned in this document, if any, may be the registered or unregistered trademarks of the owners of the products.

July 2004

THIRD-PARTY COPYRIGHTS

This product includes software developed and copyrighted by the following persons or groups:

Copyright © 1996-1997 Keith Rule (keithr@europa.com)

Copyright @ 1995-1997 Eric Young (eay@mincom.oz.au) All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright © 1986 by Sun Microsystems, Inc.

SUN RPC IS PROVIDED AS IS WITH NO WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND INCLUDING THE WARRANTIES OF DESIGN, MERCHANTIBILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE OR TRADE PRACTICE.

Sun RPC is provided with no support and without any obligation on the part of Sun Microsystems, Inc. to assist in its use, correction, modification or enhancement.

SUN MICROSYSTEMS, INC. SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS, TRADE SECRETS OR ANY PATENTS BY SUN RPC OR ANY PART THEREOF.

In no event will Sun Microsystems, Inc. be liable for any lost revenue or profits or other special, indirect and consequential damages, even if Sun has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Copyright @ 1991-2 RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided 'as is' without express or implied warranty of any kind."

Copyright $\ensuremath{\mathbb{C}}$ 1983 Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTIBILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Contents

| Information Resources | 5 |
|--|------------|
| About BindView Corporation | .6 |
| Online Documents | .6 |
| Using PDF Files 1 | 6۱ |
| User Guides | 16 |
| Release Notes | L/ 17 |
| | 7 |
| | . / |
| | . / |
| | .8 |
| Chapter 1 Overview1 | 9 |
| BindView RMS Console | 20 |
| Understanding bv-Control for Windows2 | 21 |
| bv-Control for Windows Architecture | 21 |
| BindView RMS Console Components | 21 |
| Information Server | 21 |
| Configuration Folder | 21 |
| Enterprise Configuration Service | 22 |
| bv-Config Utility2 | 22 |
| Query Engine Service | 23 |
| Master Query Engine 2 | 23 |
| Slave Query Engine | 23 |
| | <u>′</u> 4 |
| | :4 |
| Component Installation2 | 24 |
| Query Engine Installation | 24 |
| Configuring Query Engine Settings | 25 |
| Uninstalling the Components | 25 |
| Chapter 2 Installing the Product | 7 |
| System Requirements | 28 |
| BindView RMS Console System Requirements | 28 |
| Information Server System Requirements | 28 |
| bv-Control for Windows | 29 |
| Before Installing bv-Control for Windows | ;0 |

| Starting Installation 30 |) |
|---|-------------------------|
| Upgrading bv-Control for Windows | L |
| Installing bv-Control for Windows | L |
| Configuring the Console34Adding Product Licenses36Adding Users38 | 1 5 3 |
| Configuring bv-Control for Windows |)) |
| Removing bv-Control for Windows 52 Uninstalling the Product 52 Removing the Product 54 | 2 2 1 |
| Chapter 3 Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console 59 | • |
| Introduction |)) L 7 |
| Chapter 4 Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service71 | L |
| Enterprise Configuration Service 72 Launching the ECS Install 72 Installing the ECS 74 | 2 2 1 |
| Chapter 5 Installing Query Engine Services |) |
| Query Engine Services 80 Installing a Master Query Engine 80 Selecting a Machine Port 87 Selecting a Destination Directory 88 Installing a Slave Query Engine 94 Selecting a Host for the Slave 94 Selecting a Destination Directory 100 Silently Installing a Query Engine 104 Preparing for the silent installation 104 Performing the silent installation 106 Silently Upgrading Query Engines 107 |)) 7 3 1 1) 1 1 5 5 7 |
| Chapter 6 The BindView Support Service 119 |) |
| | י ר |
| Managing binuview Support Service | J |

10 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

| | Installing the Service Using bv-Config |
|-------|--|
| | Installing Using the Support Service Executable |
| Chapt | er 7 Configuring the Product |
| | Configuring bv-Control for Windows |
| | Running the Configuration Wizard |
| | Manually Changing the Configuration |
| | Managing Connection Databases |
| | Using the Connection Database Dialog |
| | Credential Database |
| | Managing Credentials Without Using the Wizard |
| | Assigning a Credential Database to a User |
| | Port Settings |
| Chapt | er 8 Configuring |
| Query | r Engine Settings159 |
| | Configuring the Query Engine |
| | Accessing the Query Engine Settings Dialog |
| | Query Engine Settings Tabs |
| | Cache Tab |
| | Event Logging Tab |
| | Options Tab |
| | Password Analysis Tab |
| | Error Logging Tab |
| | JODS Tab |
| | Advanced Security Tab |
| | Master Query Engine/Information Server Communication Protocol .188 |
| | Security Tab |
| | ECS Tab |
| | Sessions Tab |
| | SQE Usage Tab |
| | Bandwidth Schedule Tab |
| | Exporting Query Engine Settings |
| | Distribution Rules |
| | Manually Adding an Absolute Rule |
| | Manually Adding a Wildcard Kule |
| | Adding a Rule Using the Wizard |
| | Saving |

| Distribution Rule Changes | .214 |
|--|-------|
| Removing a Rule | .215 |
| Default Group | .216 |
| Viewing Rule Results | .216 |
| Site Based Distribution Rules | .217 |
| Promoting and Demoting Query Engines Promoting a | . 219 |
| Slave Query Engine | .219 |
| Demoting a Master Query Engine | .219 |
| Chapter 9 Using Query-Related Features | 221 |
| Understanding Oueries | . 222 |
| Query Components | .222 |
| Creating a Ouerv | . 223 |
| Selecting a Data Source | .223 |
| Adding Fields | .224 |
| Adding Filters | .225 |
| Adding Sorts | .227 |
| Adding Scopes | .228 |
| | .231 |
| Rerunning Queries from the Grid Toolbar | .232 |
| Monitoring the Status of Processed Queries | .234 |
| Dialog Book | . 235 |
| Using ActiveAdmin | . 237 |
| Deleting Resource Objects | .237 |
| Changing Resource Object Attributes | .238 |
| Deleting Historical Datasets and Session Logs | .240 |
| Baselining | . 241 |
| Creating a Delta Dataset | .242 |
| Exporting | . 244 |
| Exporting Prerequisites | .245 |
| Exporting to a Disk File | .245 |
| | .240 |
| Running Task Lists | .249 |
| Creating Schedules | 253 |
| Charting | . 259 |
| Creating a Series Chart | .259 |
| Chapter 10 Using the Product | 263 |
| Understanding Oueries | 264 |
| | |

| | Scoping | 264 |
|-------|--|------|
| | Default Scope | .264 |
| | Advanced Scopes | .265 |
| | Searching for machines to include in a Scope | .266 |
| | Scope File Generator | .208 |
| | Excluding Scopes | .274 |
| | Named Scopes | .274 |
| | ActiveAdmin | 277 |
| | ActiveAdmin Record Operations | .279 |
| | Moving Active Directory Objects | .280 |
| | Effective Permissions Analysis | 281 |
| | Administrative Shares | 283 |
| | Communication Settings | 284 |
| | Disk Space Settings | 284 |
| | Health & Status Check | 285 |
| Chan | tor 11 Using BindView Patch Deployment | 207 |
| Спар | | 207 |
| | | 288 |
| | Patch Assessment | 288 |
| | Patch Assessment Data Source | .288 |
| | Patch Deployment Configuration | .292 |
| | Patch Packaging | 294 |
| | Viewing Patch Assessment Results | .294 |
| | Patch Packages | .298 |
| | Creating a Patch Package | .299 |
| | Patch Deployment Console | 308 |
| | Launching the Patch Deployment Console | .308 |
| | Viewing Patch Assessment Query Results | .309 |
| | Deploying Patches | .312 |
| Chapt | ter 12 Web Services | 317 |
| | Understanding Web Services | 318 |
| | Features | 318 |
| | Licenses | 319 |
| | Requirements | 319 |
| | Web Services | .319 |
| | Adding Licenses for Web Services | .319 |
| | Working with Web Services | 320 |
| | Web Services Data Sources | .320 |

Chapter 13 Uninstalling Program Components Using

| bv-Config Utility |
|--|
| Uninstalling the Product |
| Removing a Query Engine |
| Removing a Support Service |
| Removing an Enterprise Configuration Service |
| Viewing Uninstall Details |
| Appendix A Secondary Windows 2000 Installation |
| Glossary |
| Index |

Information Resources

| In This Section | About BindView Corporation | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|--|
| | Online Documents | |
| | Online Documents | |
| | Alert Statements | |
| | Contacting BindView | |
| | | |

| About BindView Corporation | BindView Corporation is a leading provider of proactive business policy, IT security and directory management software worldwide. BindView solutions and services enable customers to centralize and automate policy compliance, vulnerability management, directory administration and migration across the entire organization. With BindView insight at work [™] , customers benefit from reduced risk and improved operational efficiencies with a verifiable return on investment. More than 20 million licenses have shipped to 5,000 companies worldwide, spanning all major business segments and the public sector. |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Online Documents | Documentation is provided in the following electronic formats on the BindView product CD: |
| | Adobe® Acrobat® PDF files HTML Release Notes files Online help |
| Using PDF Files | With Adobe Acrobat PDF files, you can navigate through a document quickly and perform full-text searches. In addition, the PDF files can be viewed online, distributed to multiple users electronically, or printed. |
| | You must have Adobe® Reader® installed to read the PDF files. |
| | To view PDF files, double-click PDF files to open them, and then move through the document by clicking topic headings in the left pane or green hypertext links in the text. To print copies, click Print from the File menu. |
| Installing Adobe Reader | Adobe Reader installation programs for common operating systems are available for a free download from the Adobe Web site at <i>www.adobe.com</i> . |
| User Guides | The Docs directory on the BindView product CD contains copies of the user guides and other documentation in the PDF format. |
| | The <i>bv-Control for Windows User Guide</i> contains information about bv-Control for Windows v8.00 and about the BindView RMS Console and Information Server v8.00. If you upgrade the BindView RMS Console and Information Server, the <i>BindView RMS Console and</i> <i>Information Server User Guide</i> included with the update will contain information about the new version of the Console. |

| Release Notes | If the autorun function is enabled, a Readme HTML file for your BindView product is accessible under the Documentation menu o the BindView setup menu when you insert your CD. You also can select to view this file after the installation is completed, or by browsing to the Release Notes directory in the root directory for your program: | |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| Online Help | Comprehensive help is available from the Help menu on the BindView RMS Console and the BindView RMS Web Console. Additionally, you can access help by clicking the Help button in any dialog, by right-clicking an item and selecting Help from the action menu, or by pressing F1 in any dialog. | |
| Typestyle Conventions | The following conventions are observed throughout this guide: Bold text is used to designate file and folder names, dialog titles, names of buttons, icons, and menus, and terms that are objects of a user selection. <i>Italic</i> text is used for word emphasis, defined terms, and manual titles. Monospace text (Courier) is used to show literal text as you would enter it, or as it would appear onscreen. | |
| Alert Statements | The alerting statements are Notes, Cautions, and Warnings. These statements are formatted in the following style: Note: Information that is incidental to the main text flow, or to an important point or tip provided in addition to the previous statement or instruction. Caution: Advises of machine or data error that could occur should the user fail to take or avoid a specified action. | |
| | Warning: Requires immediate action by the user to prevent actual loss of data or where an action is irreversible, or when physical damage to the machine or devices is possible. | |

Contacting
BindViewBindView has sales and support offices around the world. For
information on contacting BindView, please refer to the information
below or to the BindView Web site: www.bindview.com

For Technical Support: www.bindview.com/support

Technical Support is available Monday through Friday from 7:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. Central Time. Normal working hours for all other departments are 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m.

| Phone | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---|
| Sales and Customer | U.S. and Canada | 800-813-5869 |
| Service | Outside N. America | 713-561-4000 |
| Technical Support | U.S. and Canada | 800-813-5867 |
| | Outside N. America | 713-561-4000 |
| Training/Professional | U.S. and Canada | 800-749-8439 |
| Service | Outside N. America | 713-561-4000 |
| | | |
| Fax | All Areas | 713-561-1000 |
| | | |
| E-mail | | |
| Sales | sales | s@bindview.com |
| Training | edu | u@bindview.com |
| Documentation | docs@bindview.com | |
| | | |
| Other | | |
| FTP Site | ftp://f | tp.bindview.com |
| Internet | ww | w.bindview.com |
| Postal Mail | 5151 San Fe Hou | BindView lipe, Suite 2500 uston, TX 77056 |

1 Overview

| In This Chapter | BindView RMS Console | 20 |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|----|
| | Understanding bv-Control for Windows | 21 |
| | bv-Control for Windows Architecture | 21 |
| | BindView RMS Console Components | |
| | Enterprise Configuration Service | |
| | bv-Config Utility | |
| | Query Engine Service | 23 |
| | BindView Support Service | 24 |
| | Component Installation | 24 |
| | Query Engine Installation | 24 |
| | Configuring Query Engine Settings | |
| | Configuring Query Engine Settings | |
| | Uninstalling the Components | 25 |

BindView RMS The BindView RMS® Console installs as a Snap-In to the Microsoft Management Console (MMC). The MMC is a host application which provides a common user interface enabling you to navigate the

Management Console (MMC). The MMC is a host application which provides a common user interface enabling you to navigate the BindView RMS Console application. The BindView RMS Console, along with bv-Control® for Windows®, is a powerful tool designed to help you manage your Windows environment. The BindView RMS Console serves as a host application to other BindView products, including bv-Control® for Active Directory® and bv-Control® for Microsoft® Exchange.

As you install the BindView RMS Console, you are requested to add the product you want to install with the Console. Although any of the products can be installed, only the product for which you have licenses will be operable. Refer to Chapter 2 on page 27 for more detailed information about product installation and licensing.

Fig. 1 provides a pictorial overview of the components that make up BindView RMS, including the bv-Control for Windows product.



Fig. 1 BindView RMS Components

The BindView RMS Console uses a query-based data retrieval mechanism to gather information from your Windows environment. When a query is launched, the BindView RMS Console issues a request through by-Control for Windows to gather information about your environment. Once the data is collected, it is returned to the BindView RMS Console and displayed as either a grid, chart, or a report. You can find more complete instructions on how to use the BindView RMS Console in the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

| Understanding bv-Control for Windows | bv-Control [®] for Windows [®] is a product that extends the capabilities of the RMS Console. bv-Control for Windows enables you to collect information about your Windows domains and workstations. | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| | Using bv-Control for Windows, you can capture a variety of information about hardware and software configuration for any Windows machine. You can also gather information on users and groups. With bv-Control for Windows, you can use the power of the Console to analyze aspects of your Windows servers, domains and workstations, including: | | |
| | • Network-wide security audits of a single domain or entire network | | |
| | Comprehensive disk space analysis of workstations, servers, domain, or multiple domains | | |
| | Custom queries and reports from your Windows Event Logs | | |
| | Analysis of services loaded on a single Windows machine or across multiple machines and multiple domains | | |
| bv-Control for | The bv-Control for Windows includes the following components: | | |
| Windows | Console components | | |
| Architecture | Enterprise Configuration Service | | |
| | bv-Config utility | | |
| | Query Engine Service | | |
| | BindView Support Service | | |
| BindView RMS Console Components | The bv-Control for Windows Console components are installed during the installation. The Console components consist of the following elements: | | |
| | Information Server | | |
| | Configuration folder | | |
| Information Server | The Information Server component provides data collection facilities for the BindView RMS Console. It provides user interface components such as dialog pages that are specific to the data sources and fields of the bv-Control for Windows product. The Information Server is also responsible for combining information in a way that realizes requests from the BindView RMS Console. | | |
| Configuration Folder | The bv-Control for Windows Configuration folder is used to configure the product to manage your network enterprise. From this folder, you can define a Connection Database, launch the bv-Config utility, and configure general network reporting options. | | |

| After the Console and the bv-Control for Windows product have been installed, the Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS) must be installed. The ECS is a 32-bit service that maintains a list of Master Query Engines and Slave Query Engines located in your network. The ECS keeps a record of the rules used for data collection by tracking which Slave Query Engines report to each Master Query Engine. You must install at least one ECS in at least one domain in your enterprise. And though it is not advised, you may install more than one ECS in your enterprise. For information on installing an ECS, see "Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service" on page 71. For overview information about Master Query Engines, see "Master Query Engine" on page 23. For overview information about Slave Query Engines, see "Slave Query Engine" on page 23. |
|---|
| The bv-Config utility is a powerful tool which enables you to view details and modify functions for all Windows machines in your enterprise from a single location. During the product installation, a copy of the bv-Config utility is installed on the machine where the ECS is installed. You can use bv-Config to manage a variety of machine and user |
| in the context of the bv-Control for Windows product. You may obtain information about additional uses for the bv-Config utility by using the online Help provided with the application. |
| For bv-Control for Windows, the bv-Config utility can be used to install Query Engine services on any Windows machine within your network, as well as promote a Slave Query Engine to a Master Query Engine and demote a Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine whenever necessary. You can also define multiple Query Engine settings, including: |
| User, computer, and last logon cache storage directories and files The number of Data Collection Agents (DCA) a Query Engine uses when gathering data Error logging creation, storage, and/or reporting Domain reporting mode Password analysis Query error logging type and level Event Logging Query Engine security type For more information about altering Query Engine settings using bv-Config, see "Configuring Query Engine Settings" on page 159. |
| |

| Query Engine Service | The BindView Query Engine service is a 32-bit service which provides access to the Windows network for the Console and bv- Control for Windows product. The Query Engines process all requests for information from bv-Control for Windows. There are two types of Query Engine services: |
|-------------------------|--|
| | Master Query EngineSlave Query Engine |
| | The Master Query Engine receives data requests in the form of a query from the Console. It then divides the query into smaller pieces (jobs) and gives those jobs to Slave Query Engines. The Master Query Engine may keep a certain number of jobs for its Slave Query Engine, depending on the number of slaves in the domain and the current distribution rules. |
| | Both Master Query Engines and Slave Query Engines divide jobs into smaller pieces called atomic jobs. Slave Query Engines use Data Collection Agents (DCA) to process each atomic job. For additional overview information about DCAs, see "Data Collection Agents" on page 24. |
| Master Query Engine | You should install at least one Master Query Engine in each domain where you want to gather network data. When you install a Master Query Engine, a Slave Query Engine is automatically installed on the machine where you installed the Master Query Engine. |
| | When the Console queries information from a Master Query Engine, it will automatically distribute the jobs among its Slave Query Engines, depending on the number of slaves in the domain and the current distribution rules. The Slave Query Engines collect data and notify the Master Query Engine that the data is ready for retrieval. While the Slave Query Engines and Master Query Engine are gathering data, the Console periodically polls each Master Query Engine for data. If the Master Query Engine has new data, it returns it to the console. |
| | For information on installing a Master Query Engine, see "Installing a Master Query Engine" on page 80. For information regarding the Query Engine Settings dialog, see "Query Engine Settings Tabs" on page 162. |
| Slave Query Engine | A Slave Query Engine is automatically installed on every machine where a Master Query Engine is installed. You can, however, install additional Slave Query Engines to aid the Master Query Engine in data collection. |
| | Slave Query Engines receive data requests in the form of jobs from a Master Query Engine. When a Slave Query Engine receives a job, it breaks the job into atomic jobs. Like Master Query Engines, Slave Query Engines use DCAs to collect data and fulfill the requirements of each atomic job. |
| | For information on installing an additional Slave Query Engine, see "Installing a Slave Query Engine" on page 94. For information about |
| | 1: Overview 23 |

Query Engine settings, see "Query Engine Settings Tabs" on page 162.

| Data Collection Agents | A Data Collection Agent (DCA) is a BindView program used by the Query Engine services to collect data from your Windows network. By default, each Master Query Engine and Slave Query Engine uses six DCAs to collect data. Using the DCA tab of the Query Engine Settings dialog accessed from bv-Config, this number can decrease to as few as one or increase to as many as thirty. Depending on the machine configuration where the Master Query Engine or Slave Query Engine is installed, you may need to decrease or increase the number of DCAs the Query Engine uses to optimize Query Engine performance. For information on changing DCA settings using the Query Engine Settings dialog, see "Agents Tab" on page 169. |
|------------------------------|---|
| BindView Support Service | The BindView Support Service is automatically installed on every machine where you install an Enterprise Configuration Service and a Query Engine service, as well as on any machine when you terminate a process using the bv-Config utility. You may also want to install the service on all domain controllers in order to set up the last logon cache. See "The BindView Support Service" on page 119 for information on installing additional copies of the Support Service. |
| Component Installation | The Console components are automatically installed when you install bv-Control for Windows. To install the service components— Enterprise Configuration Service, Query Engine services, and the BindView Support Service—you must follow specific procedures. To install an ECS, see "Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service" on page 71. |
| | For information about installing Query Engine services, see "Installing Query Engine Services" on page 79. |
| | You only need to install the BindView Support Service manually when you want to configure domain controllers for last logon caching. If you want to install a Support Service on a domain controller, use the bv-Config utility to install the service. For information about using bv-Config to install the BindView Support Service, see "The BindView Support Service" on page 119. |
| Query Engine Installation | You must install at least one Master Query Engine in each domain where you want to collect data. When you install a Master Query Engine service, a Slave Query Engine service is automatically installed. You can install additional Masters and Slaves to speed data collection. For information on installing a Master Query Engine service, see "Installing a Master Query Engine" on page 80. For information on installing a Slave Query Engine service, see |

| "Installing a Slave Query Engine" on page 94. For information on |
|--|
| upgrading the Query Engine, see "Upgrading a Query Engine" on |
| page 107. |

| Configuring Query Engine Settings | After installing the bv-Control for Windows product, the ECS, and the Query Engine service(s), you may need to adjust certain Query Engine settings to enable the product to collect network data more efficiently. | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| | The Query Engine Settings dialog is accessed through the bv-Config utility. Use this dialog to set Query Engine service options such as computer, user, and last logon cache, the number of data collection agents per query engine, disk space storage limitations, number of sessions and processes, as well as error and event log files, password analysis test files, and Query Engine security features. | | |
| | The bv-Config utility provides another type of Query Engine setting: <i>distribution rules</i> . Distribution rules enable you to assign specific Slave Query Engines to process parts of queries (jobs) for a Master Query Engine. This can increase the speed at which a query is processed by creating logical machine groupings. | | |
| | Using the bv-Config utility, you can also alter a Query Engine's type. The Promote to a Master Query Engine and Demote to a Slave Query Engine options allow you to change a Master to a Slave or a Slave to a Master. | | |
| | For information on Query Engine settings, see "Configuring Query Engine Settings" on page 159. For specific instructions on accessing the Query Engine Settings dialog, see "Accessing the Query Engine Settings Dialog" on page 160. | | |
| Uninstalling the Components | To remove by-Control for Windows components, you should use the by-Config utility. If you are removing an Enterprise Configuration Service, the components the ECS database is tracking must be removed in a specific order. | | |
| | All Query Engine services tracked by the ECS should be removed first. Then any Support Services that have been installed for last logon caching purposes should be removed. Finally, you can remove the ECS. | | |

Uninstalling the Components

Installing the Product

In This Chapter

2

| pter | System Requirements | |
|------|--|--|
| | Before Installing by-Control for Windows | |
| | Starting Installation | |
| | Upgrading bv-Control for Windows | |
| | Installing bv-Control for Windows | |
| | Configuring the Console | |
| | Configuring by-Control for Windows | |
| | Removing by-Control for Windows | |

| System Requirements | You must meet the minimum hardware and software requirements in order to use bv-Control for Windows. This section describes the system requirements for the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows. | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| BindView RMS Console System Requirements | Before you install the BindView RMS Console, you should ensure that the workstation and enterprise meet the following minimum requirements: | | |
| | • Pentium® II 450 MHz | | |
| | • 256 MB RAM | | |
| | 300 MB of free disk space | | |
| | SVGA monitor that supports 256 colors with the display set to 800 x 600 pixels | | |
| | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 SP3 (server or workstation), Windows XP® Professional SP1, or Windows Server™ 2003 or later | | |
| | Microsoft® Outlook® 2000, Novell® GroupWise® v5.5, Lotus Notes® v5.0 or Lotus Domino (only required for e-mailing export files) | | |
| | Microsoft[®] Excel (required for Excel (using OLE) export files) | | |
| | Microsoft Internet Explorer v5.5 SP1 or later | | |
| | Client for Microsoft® Networks | | |
| | If you are also installing a local Information Server, your workstation and enterprise must meet the Information Server system requirements below. | | |
| Information Server System Requirements | Before you install a v8.00 Information Server, you should ensure that your workstation and enterprise meet the following minimum requirements: | | |
| | • Pentium III 800 MHz | | |
| | • 512 MB RAM | | |
| | 500 MB of free disk space | | |
| | Microsoft Windows 2000 SP3 (server or workstation), Windows XP Professional SP1, or Windows Server 2003 or later | | |
| | Microsoft SQL Server v7.0 or 2000, or Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE) v1.0 or 2000 | | |
| | Microsoft Internet Explorer v5.5 SP1 or later | | |
| | Microsoft Outlook 2000, Novell GroupWise v5.5, Lotus Notes v5.0 or Lotus Domino (only required for e-mailing export files) | | |
| | Microsoft Excel (required for Excel (using OLE) export files)Client for Microsoft Networks | | |
| | If you install both a Console and Information Server on the same machine, the machine must meet all of the listed system require- ments. | | |

| | Version 8.00 of the BindView RMS Console and Information Server requires v8.00 or later bv-Control snap-in modules. You cannot use bv-Control snap-in modules with versions earlier than 8.00 with v8.00 of the BindView RMS Console and Information Server. If you have an earlier version of a bv-Control product, please contact your BindView representative for information about upgrading to a later version. |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| bv-Control for Windows | There are several different requirements for running each of the bv- Control for Windows components. |
| bv-Control for Windows | • Pentium III 600 MHz |
| | • 228 MB RAM |
| | 340 MB of free disk space |
| | Virtual Memory space three times the size of RAM |
| | SVGA monitor that supports 256 colors with the display set to 800 x 600 pixels |
| | Windows 2000 SP3 (Server or Workstation), Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 |
| | Client for Microsoft Networks |
| Enterprise Configuration Service | Windows 2000 SP3 (server or workstation), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 |
| | • Pentium III 600 MHz |
| | • 128 MB RAM |
| | 300 MB of free disk space |
| BindView Support | Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000 (server or workstation), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 |
| Jervices | • 32 MB RAM |
| | Note: In large domains, the Support Service on Domain Controllers may require greater resources. |

| <i>Master or Slave Query Engines**</i> | Windows 2000 SP3 (server or workstation), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003 Pentium III 600 MHz 256 MB RAM 500 MB of free disk space | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| | ** These numbers are for the default configuration. Larger scale configura- tions may require more memory and hard disk space. | | |
| Before Installing bv-Control for Windows | bv-Control for Windows requires that the BindView RMS Console and Information Server be installed in order for it to function. Before you install bv-Control for Windows, you must use the BindView RMS Infrastructure CD to install the Console and Information Server. For information on installing the BindView RMS Console and Information Server, please see the <i>BindView RMS</i> <i>Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . | | |
| | During the Console installation process, you must choose the Information Server for the Console you are installing. You can choose to install a local Information Server, or you can connect the Console to an existing Information Server. The Information Server you install or connect to is the default Information Server for the Console. | | |
| | After you install the BindView RMS Console and Information Server, you use the bv-Control for Windows CD to install the product on the Console and Information Server machines. | | |
| Starting Installation | bv-Control for Windows is shipped on a CD. The CD must be available from either a local or remotely mounted CD-ROM drive. If you do not have access to a CD-ROM drive, contact BindView Technical Support for assistance (see "Contacting BindView" on page 18). When you install bv-Control for Windows, it will integrate with an existing BindView RMS Console. | | |
| | If you are installing bv-Control for Windows for the first time, proceed to "Installing bv-Control for Windows" on page 31. | | |
| | Note: If you are installing bv-Control for Windows on a secondary Windows 2000 DC that has Active Directory replicated to it, please refer to Appendix A, "Secondary Windows 2000 Installation," on page 333 before installing. | | |

| Upgrading bv- Control for Windows | If your machine has a previously installed version of bv-Control for Windows, you need to perform an upgrade installation. For complete information on upgrading, please see the separate guide <i>bv-Control for Windows Upgrade Guide</i> . | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|--|--|
| Installing bv- Control for Windows | After you have reviewed the requirements for bv-Control for Windows (see "System Requirements" on page 28), you can use the Install panel to install bv-Control for Windows. | | | |
| | Before you install, you should review the Readme files for the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows. The Documentation menu on the bv-Control for Windows CD Install panel provides access to the bv-Control for Windows Readme. The BindView RMS Console Readme is on the BindView RMS Infrastructure CD. | | | |
| ► | To install bv-Control for Windows Insert the bv-Control for Windows CD into the CD-ROM drive for your machine. The Install Panel should appear. If it does not, use the Windows Explorer to open the CD-ROM and double-click Setup.exe. The Install Panel will appear. | | | |
| | Seack by-Control®for Windows® | | | |
| | | | Version 8.00 | |
| | | Install | Windows. | |
| | | Browse CD | Select a link on the left to continue. | |
| | Do | ocumentation | | |
| | | Contact Us | and the state of the second state of the secon | |
| | O | and and and | | |
| | | | Copyright® 2004 BindView Corporation. All rights reserved. | |
| | Policy Compliance | Vulnerability Manager | nent Directory Administration & Migration | |

Fig. 2bv-Control for Windows Install Panel

2 Click the **Install** button to initiate the installation wizard.The **Preparing to Install** panel appears.





After the Windows Installer is configured, this panel disappears and the **Welcome** panel of the InstallShield Wizard for bv-Control for Windows appears.

| by-Control for Windows - InstallShield Wizard | | |
|---|--|--|
| | Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for by-Control for Windows The InstallShield® Wizard will install by-Control for Windows on your computer. To continue, click Next. | |
| | < Back Next > Cance | |



3 Click Next to begin the installation process.The License Agreement panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows - InstallShield Wizard | × |
|--|---------------------------|
| License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully. | |
| Press the PAGE DOWN key to see the rest of the agreement. | |
| CLICK-WRAP LICENSE AGREEMENT (93.4166) | _ |
| LICENSE AGREEMENT CONFIRMATION; RETURN RIGHT. This Click-Wrap License Agreement ("Agreement") IS A CONTRACT between BindView Corporation ("BindView" or "us") and the individual or company ("Licensea "you") that is installing a BindView software package ("Software"). Certain definition set forth in Section 2. Section and subparagraph references are to this Agreement e as otherwise indicated. | e" or is are except |
| Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you select No, will close. To install by Control for Windows, you must accept this agreement. | the setup |
| Instaliphield Kack Yes | No |

Fig. 5 License Agreement

4 Read the license agreement and click **Yes** to accept the terms of the agreement.

The **Start Copying Files** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows - InstallShield Wizard | × |
|---|---|
| Start Copying Files Review settings before copying files. | |
| Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you want to review or change any settings, click Back. If you are satisfied with the settings, click Next to begin copying files. | |
| Current Settings: | |
| Install Product(s): bv-Control for Windows Destination Directory: C:VProgram Files\BindView\RMS\ Program Folder: BindView RMS Information Server: Connect to the existing server on: QNT-CANADA\ADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| | |
| InstallShield | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | |

Fig. 6 Start Copying Files

5 Review the information in the Current Settings area and click **Next**.

The BindView Setup Status screen appears while bv-Control for Windows is installed on your machine. Once installation is completed, The **BindView RMS Console Installation Completion** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows - Ins | tallShield Wizard |
|------------------------------|--|
| DV-Lontrol for Windows - Ins | BindView RMS Console Setup has finished installing by-Control for Windows on your computer. Cauch BindView RMS Console View Release Notes Click Finish to complete by-Control for Windows Setup. |
| | < Back Finish Cancel |

Fig. 7 BindView RMS Console Installation Complete Panel

If you selected **Launch BindView RMS Console** on the Setup Complete panel, the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard appears.

If you will be installing BindView Patch Deployment, you should clear the **Launch BindView RMS Console** box and the install BindView Patch Deployment Console before configuring the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows. For information on installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console, please see Chapter 3, "Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console," on page 59.

If you selected **View Release Notes** on the Setup Complete panel, the Release Notes for the bv-Control for Windows appears.

6 Select the desired option or options and click **Finish**.

Configuring the Console

After bv-Control for Windows is installed on the Console machine, the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard appears. This wizard allows you to perform the minimum configuration required by the Console and Information Server.

You use the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard to configure the following items:

- Add/Remove Products
- Add Licenses
- Add Users

Note: You can also use the Console features to custom configure the Console and the Information Server you are currently using to

meet your specific needs. For detailed information, refer to the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

To add bv-Control for Windows using the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard

1 When the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard appears, click **Next** on the Welcome panel.

The **Add/Remove Products** panel appears.

| Add/Remove Products Wizard | | | X |
|--|---|---------------------------------------|------|
| Add/Remove Products Add a product by selecting the box bes deselecting the box. Click Next to add/ | ide the product na remove selected j | ame; remove a product by products. | |
| Installed Product List | | Product Info | |
| bv-Control for Windows | Description Client Version Server Version | Windows Product 8.0 8.0 | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| < Back | Next > | Cancel | Help |

Fig. 8 Add/Remove Products Panel

2 Check **bv-Control for Windows** to add to the BindView RMS Console and click **Next**.

The **Add Licenses** panel appears.

| Add Licenses Wizard | | | | × |
|--|---|-----------------------------|-----------|---|
| Add Licenses You must add licenses to the BindView Information Server before you can use BindView RMS products and features. Click Next to continue. | | | | 1 |
| Add licenses by: • Type license keys in the t • Click Browse and select a • Drag a license file to the li | ext box and a license file, icense type l | click Add, or or ist. | | |
| License Type | Version | Total | Available | |
| BindView RMS Console Licenses | 7 | 1 | 1 | |
| BindView RMS ActiveAdmin Licenses | 7 | 1 | 1 | |
| by-Control for Windows Server Licenses | 7 | 1000 | 1000 | |
| by-Control for Windows User Licenses | 7 | 10000 | 10000 | |
| by-Control for Windows Workstation Licenses | 7 | 10000 | 10000 | |
| Add | R | emove | Browse | |
| < Back 1 | Next > | Cancel | Help | |

Fig. 9 Add Licenses Panel

| Adding Product Licenses | | In order to use the product, the Console and bv-Control for Nindows require licenses to be assigned to the object you want to query. bv-Control for Windows will only report on the number of users that you have licenses for. When you add the necessary icenses, the license contains a limited number of unassigned object icenses. These object licenses are automatically assigned when you run a query. The results of the query will only return data for the amount of object licenses that are available. For example, if the icense has 100 available user licenses, the Console will report on 110 users. |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| • | | To add licenses |
| | | In the Add Licenses panel, click your cursor in the text frame beside the Add button and enter the license code, then click Add . If you have multiple license codes, repeat this procedure for each code. |
| | - | Note: If your license information is stored on a disk, click the Have |
| | | Disk button. The license code you entered populates both the |
| | i | applicable to the license. You can also drag the license file into the |

License Type field.

2 After you have added all your licenses, click **Next** to proceed.

The License Summary panel appears.

| Add Licenses Wizard | | × |
|--|---|------|
| License Summary Click each product to view BindView Information Serv | w its licenses. Click Next to add the licenses to the ver. | |
| X Missing licenses | Added licenses | |
| Products | Licenses | |
| 🗹 BindView RMS Console | BindView RMS Console Licenses | |
| ✓ bv-Control for Windows | BindView RMS ActiveAdmin Licenses | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| <u> </u> | J | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | <back next=""> Cancel</back> | Help |

Fig. 10 License Summary Panel

If the Information Server is still missing licenses required for specific features, a caution message appears.
3 Review the license summary information and click **Next**. The **Add Licenses Completed** panel appears.

| Add Licenses Wizard | × |
|--|------|
| Add Licenses Completed The following license updates have been successfully stored on the BindView Information Server. Click Next to continue. | |
| Licenses Added BindView RMS ActiveAdmin Licenses | A P |
| | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 11 Add Licenses Completed Panel

4 Review the information on the panel and click **Next** if the panel does not contain a caution message about missing licenses.

If the panel contains a caution message for missing licenses, click **Back** to return to the Add Licenses panel and add the missing licenses.

The Add/Remove Products in progress panel appears.

| 🇚 BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard - Add/Remove Products | × |
|--|--------------|
| Add/Remove Products in progress Wait until all products are added or removed. Click Next to continue. | |
| The system is now adding/removing products to, or from the BindView RMS Console. | |
| bv-Control for Windows added | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Current Task: Connecting to backend server | _ |
| | |
| Overall Progress: 26 % complete | |
| | |
| | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>Cancel</u> | <u>l</u> elp |

Fig. 12 Add/Remove Products in Progress Panel

5 Observe the progress bars and click **Next** after bv-Control for Windows is added to the Console.

The **Add Users** panel appears.

| Add Users Wizard Add Users Add users by typing the name in the for each user. Multiple selection of u | user list or browse the users; define properties sers is allowed. Click Next to add. | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Users User S User Properties User an use ActiveAdmin User an modify queries User can modify task lists Select folder where user can run programs C:\Program Files\BindView\RMS\bin | | | | |
| < Bac | k Next > Cancel Help | | | |

Fig. 13 Add Users Panel

| Adding Users | You inst add | a can add multiple users to the Information Server you just talled or are currently using, and select the properties for each led user. |
|--------------|--------------------|--|
| | 1 | To add a user, click in the Users below the last listed user, then type the fully qualified path (the domain and the user name), or click below the last defined user and then click the browse button to display a network browser to select the desired user. |
| | 2 | For each user, check the boxes in the right-hand portion of the panel to grant BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows rights. |
| | | The User can use ActiveAdmin option is only active if an ActiveAdmin [®] license is stored on the Information Server. |
| | | Use the Select folder where user can run programs option to designate the folder location for the user's Run a Program executable choices. The Run a Program option is a post process command for query and baseline tasks added to a task list. For detailed information on task lists, refer to the <i>BindView RMS</i> <i>Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . |

When you have finished adding users, click **Next** to proceed. For more details on these rights, please see the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*. The Add Users Summary panel appears.

| Add Users Wizard | × |
|---|------|
| Add Users Summary The following users and their properties have been modified and saved in the BindView Information Server. Click Next to continue. | |
| Modified Lisers | |
| QNT-CANADA\Administrator | |
| | |
| | T |
| | |
| <back next=""> Cancel</back> | Help |

Fig. 14 Add Users Summary Panel

3 Review the summary information for the added users and click **Next**.

 You have successfully completed the BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard.

 Summary of tasks completed:

 · Add/Remove Products

 · Add Users

To close this wizard, click Finish.

The completion panel for the configuration wizard appears.

- Fig. 15 BindView RMS Console Configuration Wizard -Completion Panel
- 4 Click **Finish** to close the Configuration Wizard and open the BindView RMS Console.

After you have completed the installation process, the MMC console will appear, as shown in Fig. 16. bv-Control for Windows will appear under the BindView RMS container.



Fig. 16 Console Interface

Notice that the bv-Control for Windows item is "Not Configured." Before you can use bv-Control for Windows, you must configure it using the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard.

| Configuring bv-Control for Windows | bv-Control for Windows must be configured properly before you ca use it. Use the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard to configure the product with the required items. | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| Configuration Wizard | Use the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard to perform the following tasks: | | |
| | Install or Select an Enterprise Configuration Service Install one or more BindView Master Query Engines Create one or more Connection Databases Create one or more Credential Databases and Assign them to Users | | |
| • | To configure bv-Control for Windows using the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard | | |
| | 1 From the Console Tree, open the bv-Control for Windows container. | | |
| | 2 In the Details Pane, double-click <double b="" click="" here="" to<=""> configure bv-Control for Windows product> or open the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard by choosing Configuration Wizard from the bv-Control for Windows container shortcut menu.</double> | | |

When the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard starts, the **Welcome Panel** appears.

| ov-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| 5 | Welcome to the by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard This wizard will lead you through the necessary steps to configure by-Control for Windows. | | |
| | To continue, click Next. | | |
| | Do not show this panel again. | | |
| | <back next=""> Cancel Help</back> | | |

- Fig. 17 bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard -Welcome Panel
- **3** Click **Next** on the Welcome Panel to proceed with the Configuration Wizard.

The Install BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - ECS Installation | × |
|--|-----|
| Install BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Install an ECS for your enterprise if one is not already present. | |
| The Enterprise Configuration Service is used as a directory of all installed Query Engines and Support Services. It is recommended that you install only one ECS for your enterprise on a high availability computer. If an ECS has not been installed, please do so now. Otherwise, select the computer where the ECS is located. Install an ECS for your enterprise Select the computer where the ECS is already installed | |
| | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> | elp |



If you have an existing ECS, choose **Select the computer** where the ECS is already installed and click Next and proceed with Step 4 below.

If you do not have an existing ECS, then click **Install an ECS for your enterprise** and click **Next** to continue. Skip to Step 6 below to continue.

4 If you chose Select the computer where the ECS is already installed, the Enterprise Configuration Service Selection panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - ECS Selection | | | | | |
|--|---|------|--|--|--|
| Enterprise Configuration Service Selection Specify the computer where the Enterprise Configuration Service is installed. Click Next to set the location of the ECS. | | | | | |
| To set the location of the ECS, the Computer Name, TCP/IP Host Name, and the TCP/IP Address fields must be completed. You can specify either the Computer Name or the TCP/IP Host Name and click Resolve to complete the TCP/IP Address. | | | | | |
| ECS in AD: | Find | | | | |
| Computer Name: | ADELOSSA-TEST2 Browse | | | | |
| TCP/IP Host Name: | adelossa-test2.gnt-canada.gnt-america.lab | | | | |
| TCP/IP Address: | 10 200 10 223 Resolve | | | | |
| Port: | <default></default> | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | <back next=""> Cancel I</back> | Help | | | |



Use this dialog to set the location of the Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS).

- **5** Enter the ECS information and click **Next** to proceed. Skip to Step 7 on page 43.
- 6 If you chose Install an ECS for your enterprise, the Enterprise Configuration Service Setup Program appears.

| Welcome | <u>× × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × </u> | ≤1 |
|---------|---|----|
| | Welcome to the Enterprise Configuration Service Setup program. This program will install the Enterprise Configuration Service on your computer(s). It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law. | |
| | < Back Next> Cancel Help | |

Fig. 20 Enterprise Configuration Service Setup Program -Welcome Panel

This program leads you through the steps needed to install an Enterprise Configuration Service on your network. To install an ECS, you must know the NetBIOS name of the computer on

42 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

which you wish to install and the directory on that computer where the ECS files should be installed.

For complete step-by-step instructions on using this Wizard, please see Chapter 4, "Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service," on page 71.

Once you have installed the ECS, continue with Step 7.

7 The Install New BindView Query Engines Panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - QE Installation | | | | | × | |
|--|-----|----------------|---------------|--------|---------|-----|
| Install New BindView Query Engines Install new Query Engines on domains and workgroups that you want to report on. | | | | | | Įų. |
| A Query Engine must be installed on at least one computer in each domain you wish to report on. To install a new Query Engine, click the Install New QE button. For advanced Query Engine installation and configuration, use by-Config. | | | | | | |
| | Dom | nain/Workgroup | Query Engine | Туре | Version | í l |
| | | QNT-ITALY | LNT-PISA-2KA | Master | 8.0 | 1 |
| | | QNT-ITALY | LNT-UDINE-2KP | Slave | 8.0 | |
| | | SOUTHWESTERN | ANTONITO | Master | 8.0 | |
| | | | | | | |
| Install New QE | | | | | | |
| < Back Next > Cancel Help | | | | | | , |

Fig. 21 Install New BindView Query Engines Panel

If you used an existing ECS, your existing Master Query Engines (MQE), if any, will be listed here. Your network must have at least one Master Query Engine in *each* domain on which you wish to report. You may wish to install more Master Query Engines to balance Query data collection.

8 If you have no Master Query Engines, click **Install New QE**. The **BindView Query Engine Setup program** appears.



Fig. 22 Welcome Panel - BindView Query Engine Setup

This program leads you through the steps needed to install the Master Query Engine (MQE) on your network. To install a MQE, you must know the NetBIOS name of the computer hosting your ECS, the domain and machine on which you wish to install the MQE, the user name you wish to add as a Service Account for the Query Engine to use, and the directory on that computer where the ECS files should be installed.

For complete step-by-step instructions on using this Wizard, please see Chapter 5, "Installing Query Engine Services," on page 79.

To install more than one MQE, click **Install MQE** again, and repeat the wizard.

Once you have installed the MQE(s), click continue with Step 9.

9 Click Next.

The Add/Remove Connection Databases panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - Create Connection DB | × |
|---|-----------------------|
| Add/Remove Connection Databases Add a connection database by providing a name and an optional password; remove a connection database by selecting a connection and pressing Delete | a. 🚺 |
| A Connection Database allows you to establish communication with one or mo Query Engine services within your enterprise. To run a query, you must define one connection database. Connection Databases | re Master at least |
| Connection Database Name | A |
| Click and edit here to add new connection database. | |
| | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel | Help |

Fig. 23 Add/Remove Connection Databases Panel

Connection Databases are groupings of one or more Query Engines that allow the user to run a query. A user can only connect to (and collect information from) Connection Databases in the Connection Databases assigned to them.

10 To create a new Connection Database, click in the **Connection Database Name** field.

The New Connection Database dialog appears.

| New Connection Database | × |
|-------------------------|---|
| Database <u>N</u> ame | 1 |
| Password | 1 |
| Verify Password | |
| OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp | |

Fig. 24 New Connection Database

44 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

- **11** Type a name for the connection database you are creating, then give the Connection Database a password and verify the password. Click **OK** to create the Connection Database.
- **12** You can also create additional connection databases. When you have finished creating Connection Databases, click **Next** to continue.

The **Select Query Engines** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configural | ation Wizard - Select Query Engines | × |
|---|--|--------------|
| Select Query Engines Select Query Engines to include | de in a connection database. Click Next to contin | ue. |
| To insert a Query Engine, select a c the Available Query Engines list, and | connection database, select one or more Query E nd click the '>>' button. | ingines in |
| Available Query Engines | Available Connection Database | s |
| Query Engines Domain/Work | rkgroup Connection Databases | A |
| B DOC-CORN GRAIN | GRAIN Query Engines | |
| | <u> </u> | |
| I | | ~ |
| | <u>Clo</u> ne Connection Data | base |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel | <u>H</u> elp |

Fig. 25 Select Query Engines Panel

The left side of the panel contains all the Master Query Engines connected to your ECS. The right side lists all your Connection Databases.

13 Select one or more Query Engines from the left side, then select a Connection Database on the right, then click the >> button or double-click the Query Engine to add the Query Engine to the Connection Database.

The Query Engine appears under the Connection Database on the right side of the panel.

Note: Any Query Engine can be part of more than one Connection Database.

14 Once you have configured your Connection Databases, click **Next** to proceed.

| by-Control for Windows Config | juration Wizard - Qu | ery Engine Status | × |
|---|---|------------------------------|--------------------|
| Query Engine Status Verify the status of one or r | more Query Engines. Clia | ck Next to continue. | |
| You can select a single Qu verify all connection databa Available Connection <u>D</u> ata | iery Engine or a Connec ases. bases | tion Database to Verify. Cli | ck Verify All to |
| Connection Databases | Domain/Workgroup | Status 🔺 | Verify |
| 🙀 All Query Engines La DOC-CORN-W 🙀 GRAIN Query Engi | GRAIN | Connected | Verify <u>A</u> ll |
| Ĩ⊑ DOC-CORN-W | GRAIN | Connected | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ex | t> <u>C</u> ancel | Help |

The **Query Engine Status** panel appears.

- Fig. 26 Query Engine Status Panel
- **15** Verify the status of your Query Engines by selecting them one at a time and clicking **Verify** or click **Verify All**.

bv-Control for Windows will attempt to connect to each Query Engine. When it's finished, the **Status** column should say **Connected**.

16 Click Next to proceed.

The Connection Database Assignment panel appears.

| | <u> </u> |
|---|----------|
| Connection Database Assignment Assign a connection database to use for querying. Click Next to continue. | ł |
| Select a Default connection database and assign a connection database for each user. If a user has no connection database set, the Default will be used. Default: [[None] | |
| User-Connection Database | |
| User Name Connection Database | |
| 🙍 GRAIN\chaber (Default) | |
| | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp | |

Fig. 27 Connection Database Assignment Panel

This panel allows you to choose a default Connection Database, or assign Connection Databases to particular users.

17 To assign a default Connection Database, choose the Connection Database from the **Default** drop-down list. To assign a connection database to a particular user, choose the **Connection Database** drop-down list beside the user's name and choose the Connection Database that should be assigned to the user. Once you have set up the Connection Database assignments, click **Next** to proceed.

The **Configure User Options** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - User Options | × |
|--|------|
| Configure User Options Select a user from the list to view/set options. You can also select multiple users from the list to set the same options for all the selected users. | |
| Users Users Options Use credentials for query Use credentials for query | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 28 Configure User Options Panel

This panel allows you to set user options for selected users. If the **Use credentials for query** option is selected, bv-Control for Windows will use the credentials from the user's credential database to run queries.

- **18** Click **Next** to continue.
- **19** The **Credential Check** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - Credential Check 🛛 🔀 |
|---|
| Credential Check Determines the credentials needed to run bv-Control for Windows. Click Next to continue. |
| Credential Check |
| All of the credentials that are necessary to run bv-Control for Windows have been entered. |
| Click next to modify the credentials and complete the configuration steps. |
| Domain / Workgroup Credential Configuration Summary: |
| Credentials for the following domains/workgroups |
| Domain/Workgroup : SOUTHWESTERNCOL Account : southwe: |
| ۲ |
| < Back Next> Cancel Help |



This panel allows you to review the necessary credentials for your Connection Databases. If you set up any Query Engines with passwords, they will be listed here, and you will need to add them to Credential Databases. In addition, in order to use ActiveAdmin, you may need to set up credentials for various domains.

20 After you have reviewed the information, click **Next** to modify the credentials.

The Add Credential Databases panel appears.

| bv-Con | trol for Windows Configuration Wizard - Add Credential Databases | × |
|--------|---|--------------|
| Ad | d Credential Databases Add credential databases to the Information Server. Click on Modify to change the database's password. Click Next to continue. | U |
| | Credential Databases | |
| | Database Name | A |
| | Lick and edit here to add new credential database; | - |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | <u>~</u> |
| | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel | <u>H</u> elp |

Fig. 30 Add Credential Databases Panel

Credentials Databases are sets of credentials—user name, domain, and password combinations—that allow access to password-protected Query Engines, and allow the Query Engine to perform acts as if they were a user. Credentials Databases are used to access password-protected Query Engines, and to perform ActiveAdmin tasks. A user can only perform tasks allowed by the set of credentials in the currently assigned Credentials Database.

21 To create a new Credentials Database, click in the Database Name field and type the new Database's name. When you press Enter or click outside the field, the Create New Database dialog appears.

| Create New Data | base | × |
|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| <u>D</u> atabase Name: | GRAIN Credential Database | <u>0</u> K |
| <u>P</u> assword: | | <u>C</u> ancel |
| ⊻erify Password: | | |
| | | |

Fig. 31 Create New Database Dialog

22 Type a password for the database you are creating, then verify the password. Click **OK** to create the Credentials Database.

If needed, click and type another name to create another Credentials Database. You can have as many credential databases as you need.

48 *bv-Control for Windows User Guide*

23 Click **Next** to proceed.

The **Select Credentials** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - | Add Credentials |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Select Credentials Add credentials to the credential databases. C | Click Next to continue. |
| Products bv-Control for Windows | Credential Database creddb |
| Resource Objects Query Engine Credentials Query Credentials Active Directory General Query Credentials | Credentials QNT-CANADA |
| < Back | Next > Cancel Help |

Fig. 32 Select Credentials Panel

The list on the right-hand side lists the available Credential Databases.

24 Select a Credential Database from the list, then use the browser on the left to add items to the Credential Database.

There are two types of items you can add to the Credentials Database:

- Query Engine Credentials
- Query Credentials
- General Query Credentials

Query Engine Credentials need to be added to the Credentials Database only if they are password protected. To add them, open the Query Engines item, select the Query Engine, and enter its password when prompted.

Query Credentials need to be added to allow users to perform ActiveAdmin tasks. When a user performs an ActiveAdmin task such as making a change to a user, file, share, or other object, the credentials you supply will be used to do so. To add Query Credentials to the Credentials Database, open the **Query Credentials** item and browse to the user account you wish to add as an ActiveAdmin Account. Select the user and click >> to add the user, then enter the password when prompted.

The **General Query Credentials** item allows you to specify a user from any domain on your network as an ActiveAdmin Account. To add any user, select **General Query Credentials** and click >> to add the account. Enter the Domain, Account Name, and Password to use, and click **OK** to continue.

25 When you have finished adding credentials to the Credential Databases click **Next** to continue.

The **Assign a Credential Database to Each User** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Co | nfiguration Wiza | ard - Assign Credential Database | × |
|---|---|---|--------------|
| Assign a Credential Da Assign one database t column to assign the s | tabase to Each o each user. Selec ame database to m | User at multiple row in the credential database nultiple users. | U ł |
| User-Credential Databa | ise | | |
| User Name | | Credential Database | |
| GRAIN\chaber | | [None] | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | | | |
| | | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack | <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel | <u>H</u> elp |



- **26** For each user you created, select a Credentials Database that should be assigned to the user from the pop-up list in the **Credential Database** column.
- **27** When you have assigned a Credential Database to each user, click **Next** to proceed.

The **Configure User Options** panel of the configuration wizard appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - User Options | × |
|--|------|
| Configure User Options Select a user from the list to view/set options. You can also select multiple users from the list to set the same options for all the selected users. | |
| Users Users Use credentials for query Use credentials for query | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 34 Configure User Options Panel

The Verifying Configuration Settings panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - Verifying Configuration | × |
|--|------------|
| Verifying Configuration Settings Review configuration settings that need to be set in order to run by-Control for Windows. Click Back to make changes. | U t |
| Configuration Issues | |
| All configuration settings have been entered to run by-Control for Windows. | |
| < Back Next> Cancel | Help |

- Fig. 35 Verifying Configuration Settings Panel
- **28** Verify the configuration settings you chose earlier.
- 29 Click Next to continue.

The **Summary** panel appears.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - Summary | × |
|---|------|
| Summary Review the summary of your configuration. Click Finish to complete the configuration. | |
| Summary | |
| Enterprise Configuration Service: | ▲ |
| Computer Name: ANTONITO | |
| TCP/IP Host Name: ANTONITO | |
| TCP/IP Address: 192.168.59.101 Port: <default></default> | |
| Connection Database(s): | _ |
| 1969 | |
| Query Engine: ANTONITO Domain/Workgroup: SOU | Т |
| Default Connection Database: NONE | |
| I Connection Batabases | 1 |
| < Back Finish Cancel | Help |

Fig. 36 Summary Panel

- **30** Review the summary of your configuration.
- **31** Click **Finish** to close the wizard.

| Removing bv-Control for Windows | Re • (| Removing bv-Control for Windows consists of the following:Uninstalling bv-Control for Windows or | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|------------|--|
| | • [| Removing bv-Control fo | or Windows from the Console | | |
| Uninstalling the Product | You usi Ad | u can uninstall bv-Cont ng the recommended p d/Remove Program | trol for Windows from your machine by process of removing programs through Properties dialog. | y າ the | |
| I | ▶ То | uninstall bv-Conti | rol for Windows | | |
| | 1 | Close all applications | running under Windows. | | |
| | 2 | Click Start from the | task bar. | | |
| | 3 | Select Settings , and | l click Control Panel . | | |
| | | From the Control D | | | |
| | 4 | 4 From the Control Panel, double-click Add/Remove Programs. | | | |
| | | 🐼 Control Panel | | | |
| | | File Edit View Favorites Tools | Help | | |
| | | \leftarrow Back \rightarrow \rightarrow \leftarrow 🔂 QSearch \Box_{0} | Brolders 🧭 😤 🏹 🖄 🏢 - | | |
| | | Address 🐼 Control Panel | ▼ @Go | | |
| | | Name 🔺 | Comment | | |
| | | Accessibility Options | Customizes accessibility features for your computer | | |
| | | Add/Remove Hardware | Installs, removes, and troubleshoots hardware | | |
| | | Add/Remove Programs | Installs and removes programs and Windows components | | |
| | | Automatic Updates | Configures administrative settings for your computer Configures Automatic Undates | | |
| | | Addinate Opdates | Sets the date, time, and time zone for your computer | | |
| | | Display | Customizes your desktop display and screen saver | | |
| | | Folder Options | Customizes the display of files and folders, changes file associatio | | |
| | | A Fonts | Displays and manages fonts on your computer | | |
| | | Gaming Options | Adds, removes, or changes settings for game controllers | | |
| | | Keyboard | Customizes your keyboard settings | | |
| | | Mouse | Customizes your mouse settings | | |
| | | 🔁 Network and Dial-up Connections | Connects to other computers, networks, and the Internet | | |
| | | Phone and Modem Options | Configures your telephone dialing rules and modem properties | | |
| | | Rower Options | Configures energy-saving settings for your computer | | |
| | | Regional Options | Customizes settings for display of languages, numbers, times, an | | |
| | | Scanners and Cameras | Configures installed scanners and cameras | | |
| | | Scheduled Tasks | Schedules computer tasks to run automatically | | |
| | | Sounds and Multimedia | Assigns sounds to events and configures sound devices | | |
| | | Speech | Changes speech engine settings. | | |
| | | Text Services | Provides system information and Changes environment settings Clustomizes settings for text input of languages | | |
| | | Users and Passwords | Manages users and passwords for this computer | | |
| | | Installs and removes programs and Window | | | |

Fig. 37 Control Panel

5 The Add/Remove Programs Properties dialog appears.



Fig. 38 Add/Remove Programs Properties dialog

6 Select **bv-Control for Windows** and click **Change/Remove**.

The Welcome panel of the bv-Control for Windows -InstallShield Wizard appears.

| by-Control for V | Windows - InstallShield Wizard | ×I |
|-----------------------------|---|----|
| Welcome Modify, repair | r, or remove the program. | |
| Welcome to modify the cu | the bv-Control for Windows Setup Maintenance program. This program lets you urrent installation. Click one of the options below. | |
| O Modify | | |
| 1 ⁴ | Select new program features to add or select currently installed features to remove. | |
| • Repair | Reinstall all program features installed by the previous setup. | |
| C Remove | Remove all installed features. | |
| | < Back. Next > Cancel | |



Use this panel to modify, repair, or remove the program. The Repair option is selected by default.

7 Select the **Remove** option and click **Next**.

The **Confirm Uninstall** message appears.

| Confirm Uninstall | × |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Do you want to completely remove the | selected application and all of its features? |
| OK | Cancel |

8 Click **OK** to completely remove bv-Control for Windows. The InstallShield Wizard will remove bv-Control for Windows from your machine.

The Maintenance Complete panel appears.



9 Click **Finish** to successfully complete the uninstall.

Note: For information on how to uninstall the BindView RMS Console and local or remote Information Servers, please refer to the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

Removing the Product You can remove by-Control for Windows from the Console by using the **Add/Remove Product** wizard.

- **•** To remove bv-Control for Windows from the Console
 - **1** From the console tree, right-click on the BindView Risk Management Console container to display the shortcut menu, as shown in Fig. 41.





2 Select the Add/Remove Product command.

The Add/Remove Products Wizard appears.





3 Click Next.

| Installed Product List | Add/Remove Products Wizard Add A product by selecting the box beside the product name; remove a product by deselecting the box. Click Next to add/remove selected products. | | | | | |
|---|--|----------------|-----------------|------|--|--|
| bw-Control for Windows Description Windows Product Client Version 8.0 Server Version 8.0 | Installed Product List | | Product Info | | | |
| Lient Version 8.0 Server Version 8.0 | by-Control for Windows | Description | Windows Product | _ | | |
| | | Client Version | 8.U 0.0 | _ | | |
| | | Server version | 0.0 | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | I | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | _ | , | | |
| <back next=""> Cancel Help</back> | < Back | Next> | Cancel | Help | | |

The Add/Remove Products panel appears.

Fig. 43 Add/Remove Products Panel

- 4 Uncheck bv-Control for Windows and click Next.
- **5** A message appears instructing you to restart the RMS Console.



6 Click **OK** to continue.

The Add/Remove Products in Progress panel appears.

| Add/Remove Products Wizard |
|--|
| Add/Remove Products in progress Wait until all products are added or removed. Click Next to continue. |
| The system is now adding/removing products to/from the BindView RMS Console. |
| ✓ bv-Control for Windows removed |
| |
| |
| |
| Convert Table — Description by Control (as) (induces |
| |
| Overall Progress: 100 % |
| |
| |
| <back next=""> Cancel Help</back> |



7 Click Next to continue.

| Add/Remove Products Wizar | d | × |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| | Completing the Add/Remove Products Wizard | |
| | You have successfully completed the Add/Remove Products Wizard. | |
| | To close this wizard, click Finish. | |
| | < Back. Finish Cancel Help | |

The Add/Remove Products Wizard reappears.

- Fig. 45 Add/Remove Products Completion Panel
- 8 Click **Finish** to close the Add/Remove Products wizard.

Removing the Product

Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console

In This ChapterIntroduction60BindView Patch Deployment Console Requirements60Before Installing the Patch Deployment Console60Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console61Removing the BindView Patch Deployment Console67

3: Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console 59

3

| Introduction | BindView Patch Deployment is an optional feature of bv-Control for Windows. BindView Patch Deployment allows you to use bv-Control for Windows to scan Windows machines on your network for missing patches and report on the missing patches. After scanning, you can use the Patch Packaging wizard to create Patch Packages to deploy using a third-party tool, or you can use the BindView Patch Deployment Console to create and deploy packages. |
|---|--|
| | The Patch Assessment Data Source, which is used to scan for missing patches, is installed when you install bv-Control for Windows. The Patch Packaging wizard, which packages patches for downloading to target machines, is also installed with bv-Control for Windows. This chapter discusses the requirements for and installation of the BindView Patch Deployment Console. |
| BindView Patch Deployment Console Requirements | Before you can install the BindView Patch Deployment Console, your computer must meet certain requirements. These requirements are for the BindView Patch Deployment Console only. Pentium® III 600 MHz Processor 324 MB RAM 235 MB of free disk space (Windows® 2000 SP3 or Windows® XP Professional) SVGA display that supports 256 colors with the resolution set to 1024 x 768 pixels or greater BindView RMS® Console and Information Server v7.30 SP1 or later bv-Control for Windows v7.35 or later Windows 2000 SP3 (server or workstation) Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 Client for Microsoft Networks MDAC 2.7 or later MSXML 4.0 or later Microsoft .NET Framework 1.0 or later If any of the last four items are missing, you can install them using the BindView Patch Deployment for the second se |
| Before Installing the Patch Deployment Console | The BindView Patch Deployment Console requires that both the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows be installed in order for it to function. Before you install the BindView Patch Deployment Console, you must use the BindView RMS Infrastructure CD to install the Console and Information Server. For information on installing the BindView RMS Console and Information Server, please see the <i>BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . In addition, you must install bv-Control for |

Windows. For information on installing bv-Control for Windows, please see Chapter 2, "Installing the Product," on page 27.

| Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console | BindView Patch Deploymen bv-Control for Windows. The local or remotely mounted to a CD-ROM drive, contact assistance (see "Contacting install BindView Patch Depl BindView RMS Console v7.3 Windows v7.35 or later inst | t is shipped on the same CD as the CD must be available from either a CD-ROM drive. If you do not have access BindView Technical Support for BindView" on page 18). When you oyment, it will integrate with an existing 30 SP 1 or later and bv-Control for tallation. |
|---|--|---|
| | If your machine has an ear you must upgrade to the lat support BindView Patch De to upgrade bv-Control for V for Windows" on page 31. | lier version of bv-Control for Windows, test version of bv-Control for Windows to ployment. For more information on how Vindows, refer to "Upgrading bv-Contro |
| | After you have reviewed th Deployment Console (see " Requirements" on page 60 the BindView Patch Deploy | e requirements for the BindView Patch BindView Patch Deployment Console), you can use the Install panel to instal ment Console. |
| | Insert the bv-Control for for your machine. The not, use the Windows I double-click Setup.exc | or Windows CD into the CD-ROM drive Install Panel should appear. If it does Explorer to open the CD-ROM and e. The Install Panel will appear. |
| | 2 If you are already insta Install panel reappear Windows. | alling bv-Control for Windows, the safter you have installed bv-Control for |
| | | BINDVIEW |
| | Install Browse CD Contents | bv-Control ® for Windows® Version 7.35 |
| | Documentation Contact Us | Click the Install button to install bv-Control for Windows or bv-Control for Web Services. It's recommended that you refer to the Upgrade Guide prior to installing the product. All product documentation are located in the Documentation panel. |
| | Other Products | |
| | | Copyright@ 2003 BindView Corporation. All rights reserved. |

Fig. 46 bv-Control for Windows Install Panel

3: Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console 61

3 Click **Install Products** and the **Install Products** panel appears.





4 Click **BindView Patch Deployment**. The BindView Patch Deployment installation panel appears.



Fig. 48 BindView Patch Deployment Installation Panel

- **5** The BindView Patch Deployment installer first checks your machine to see that it meets the prerequisites.
- 62 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

If all required components are present, an **OK** icon **or** appears next to all the prerequisites. Click **Install** to install BindView Patch Deployment. The **Welcome** panel will appear.

If any of the prerequisites are missing, a red X icon **(x)** appears beside the prerequisite. Click **Install** to install the missing items. You may be required to reboot after installing the missing components. If you are required to reboot, begin the installation again.

When all required components are installed, the Patch Deployment wizard starts and the **Welcome** panel (Fig. 49 on page 63) appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | | × |
|----------------------|--|---|
| | Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for BindView Patch Deployment | |
| | The InstallShield® Wizard will install BindView Patch Deployment on your computer. To continue, click Next. | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel | |

Fig. 49 Welcome Panel

6 Read the Welcome panel, and click **Next**. The **License Agreement** panel appears.





3: Installing the BindView Patch Deployment Console 63

7 Read the license agreement and click **Yes** to accept the terms of the agreement. The **Customer Information** panel appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | | × |
|--|-------------|----------|
| Customer Information Please enter your information. | | |
| User Name: | | |
| Documentation | | |
| Company Name: | | |
| BindView Corporation | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| InstallShield | | |
| | < Back Next | > Cancel |

Fig. 51 Customer Information Panel

8 Enter a User Name and Company Name, then click Next. The Choose Destination Location panel appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | | × |
|---|----------------------------------|------------|
| Choose Destination Location Select folder where Setup will install files. | | |
| Setup will install BindView Patch Deployment in | n the following folder. | |
| To install to this folder, click Next. To install to another folder. | a different folder, click Browse | and select |
| Destination Folder C:\Program Files\BindView\RMS\PatchDep InstallShield | loyment < Back Next > | Browse |

Fig. 52 Choose Destination Location Panel

9 Click **Browse** to select a location and click **Next**, or click **Next** to use the default location. The **Select Program Folder** panel appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | × |
|---|--|
| Select Program Folder Please select a program folder. | 124 |
| Setup will add program icons to the Program F name, or select one from the existing folders li | older listed below. You may type a new folder st. Click Next to continue. |
| Program Folders: | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| BindView RMS | |
| Existing Folders: | |
| | |
| Startup | |
| InstallShield | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel |

Fig. 53 Select Program Folder Panel

10 Enter a **Start** menu program folder or choose an existing folder for the program icons, click **Next** to use the default location. The **Start Copying Files** panel appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | | × |
|--|--|--|
| Start Copying Files Review settings before copying files. | | |
| Setup has enough information to start copying change any settings, click Back. If you are sal copying files. | he program files. If you v isfied with the settings, cl | vant to review or ick Next to begin |
| Current Settings: | | |
| User Information Name: Documentation Company: BindView Corporation | | <u> </u> |
| Target Program Folder: BindView RMS Destination Folder: C:\Program Files\BindVie | w\RMS\PatchDeploymer | nt |
| x | | V V |
| InstallShield | | |
| | < Back Nex | t> Cancel |

Fig. 54 Start Copying Files Panel

11 Click **Next** to copy the files to the computer. The **Setup Status** panel shows the progress of the installation.

| InstallShield Wizard | × |
|---|--------|
| Setup Status | |
| BindView Patch Deployment Setup is performing the requested operations. | |
| Generating script operations for action: | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| InstallSkield | |
| | Cancel |

Fig. 55 Setup Status Panel

12 When copying is complete, the **InstallShield Wizard Complete** panel appears.

| InstallShield Wizard | |
|----------------------|---|
| | InstallShield Wizard Complete Setup has finished installing BindView Patch Deployment on your computer. |
| | < Back. Finish Cancel |

- Fig. 56 InstallShield Wizard Complete Panel
- **13** Click **Finish** to complete the installation.
- **14** Click **Close** in the **BindView Patch Deployment** installer dialog.

Removing the BindView Patch Deployment Console

To remove the Patch Assessment Data Source and Patch Packaging Wizard components of BindView Patch Deployment, you must remove bv-Control for Windows.

To remove the BindView Patch Deployment Console, you use the **Add/Remove Program Properties** dialog.

> To uninstall BindView Patch Deployment Console

- **1** Close all running BindView products.
- 2 Click **Start** in the Task Bar.
- **3** Choose **Settings** then **Control Panel**. The Control Panel appears.



Fig. 57 Control Panel

4 Double-click Add/Remove Programs. The Add/Remove Programs Control Panel appears.

| 🍯 Add or Ren | nove Programs | | |
|------------------------------------|---|------------------------|----------------------|
| 5 | Currently installed programs: | Sort by: Name | T |
| C <u>h</u> ange or Remove | 🖄 Adobe Acrobat 6.0 Standard | Size | 206.00MB 📥 |
| Programs | Click here for support information. | Used g | occasionally |
| 5 | To change this program or remove it from your computer, click Change or Remove. | Last Used On Change | 10/17/2003 Remove |
| Add <u>N</u> ew Programs | 🛃 Advanced Networking Pack for Windows XP | | |
| - | SindView Patch Deployment | | |
| 1 | 🔀 Bindview RapidFire Updates | Size | 620.00MB |
| Add/Remove Windows | BindView RMS Console and Information Server | Size | 276.00MB |
| Components | 📸 BindView RMS Console and Information Server Hotfix | | |
| | 🕵 CmdHere Powertoy For Windows XP | Size | 0.02MB |
| | 🔀 Debugging Tools for Windows | Size | 18.05MB |
| Set Pr <u>o</u> gram Access and | Dimension 4 v4.3 | Size | 0.19MB |
| Defaults | 🥭 Internet Explorer Q831167 | Size | 0.95MB |
| | 🙀 Java 2 Runtime Environment, SE v1.4.2_01 | Size | 106.00MB |
| | 🙀 Java 2 Runtime Environment, SE v1.4.2_03 | Size | 107.00MB |
| | 🕵 Microsoft .NET Framework (English) v1.0.3705 | | |
| | Microsoft Office XP Professional with FrontPage | Size | 536.00MB |
| | 🕵 Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine | Size | 69.75MB |
| | unter the second state of | Size | 2.12MB |
| | SN Messenger 6.1 | Size | 5.48MB 🗾 |



5 Select **BindView Patch Deployment** and click **Remove**. The **Welcome** panel appears.



Fig. 59 Welcome Panel

6 Choose **Remove**, then click **Next**. The **Confirm Uninstall** confirmation message appears.

| Confirm Uninstall | × |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Do you want to completely remove the | selected application and all of its features? |
| ОК | Cancel |



7 Click **OK** to remove the BindView Patch Deployment Console. The **Setup Status** panel appears, showing the progress of the removal.

| InstallShield Wizard | × |
|---|--------|
| Setup Status | |
| BindView Patch Deployment Setup is performing the requested operations. | |
| C:\\BindView\RMS\PatchDeployment\4.2.0.3\stHFResource.dll | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| InstallShield | |
| | Cancel |

Fig. 61 Setup Status Panel

8 When the removal is complete, the **Maintenance Complete** dialog appears. Click **Finish** to complete the removal.

Removing the BindView Patch Deployment Console

Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service

| In This Chapter | Enterprise Configuration Service | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|--|
| - | Launching the ECS Install72 | |
| | Installing the ECS | |
| | | |

4

4: Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service 71

| Enterprise Configuration Service | The Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS) is a 32-bit service that maintains a list of Master and Slave Query Engines in your network. It also maintains the rules for Query Engine data collection. After the BindView RMS Console and the bv-Control for Windows product have been installed, you must install an ECS. Normally, the ECS is installed when you run the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard. If you currently have a previously installed ECS from an earlier version of bv-Control for Windows or NOSAdmin for Windows NT, please consult the <i>bv-Control for Windows</i> <i>Upgrade Guide</i> . | |
|--|--|--|
| Launching the ECS Install | There are two methods you can use to install the ECS. You can install it from within the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard, or you can install it manually. When installing an ECS, the bv-Config utility is automatically installed on the machine where the ECS is installed. The BindView Support Service is also installed and started. If you wish to install the ECS manually, follow the procedures outlined in "To launch the ECS manually" on page 73. Perform the following steps to install the ECS and the bv-Config utility (the BindView Configuration Manager) using the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard. | |
| ► | To launch the ECS using the autorun program | |
| | Insert the bv-Control for Windows CD-ROM and install bv- Control for Windows. | |
| | 2 Run the BindView RMS Console. From the Console Tree, open the bv-Control for Windows container. | |
| | 3 In the Details Pane, double-click the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard by choosing Configuration Wizard from the bv-Control for Windows container shortcut menu. | |
| | When the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard starts, the Welcome Panel appears. | |
| | | |
1 Click **Next** on the Welcome panel to proceed with the Configuration Wizard.

| by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard | | |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | Welcome to the by-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard This wizard will lead you through the necessary steps to configure by-Control for Windows. | |
| | To continue, click Next. | |
| | | |
| | <u> < B</u> ack. <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp | |

Fig. 62 Welcome Panel

The **Install BindView Enterprise Configuration Service** panel appears.

| bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard - ECS Installation | × |
|--|-----|
| Install BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Install an ECS for your enterprise if one is not already present. | 1 |
| The Enterprise Configuration Service is used as a directory of all installed Query Engines and Support Services. It is recommended that you install only one ECS for your enterprise on a high availability computer. If an ECS has not been installed, please do so now. Otherwise, select the computer where the ECS is located. | |
| Select the computer where the ECS is already installed (Back Next> Cancel H | elp |

Fig. 63 Install BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Panel

Click **Install an ECS for your enterprise** and click **Next** to continue.

The **Welcome** dialog for the ECS install appears. Proceed to "Installing the ECS" on page 74.

► To launch the ECS manually

- **1** Insert the product CD in the CD-ROM of a local or shared drive.
- 2 From the Windows **Start** menu, select **Run**.

4: Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service 73

3 Run the program SETUP.EXE from the \bv-Control for Windows\ECS directory.

Note: You can type the path directly into the **Open** box, but be sure to include the entire path in quotation marks, including the drive letter, as shown below.

"<CD-ROM Drive Letter>:\bv-Control for Windows\ECS\SETUP.EXE"

4 Click **OK** in the **Run** dialog. The **Welcome** dialog for the ECS install appears.

Installing the ECS After the installation program starts, the **Welcome** dialog appears.



Fig. 64 Welcome Dialog

1 Read the information in the **Welcome** dialog, and click **Next**.

| Select Computer To Ins | stall Service On | x |
|------------------------|--|---|
| | Setup will install the Enterprise Configuration Service to the computer shown below. To install to the specified computer, click Next. To install to a different computer, click Browse and select another computer. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Destination Computer INDOCCORNAW2KP Browse TCP/IP Bot (Default) | |
| | < <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help | |

The **Select Computer To Install Service On** dialog appears.

Fig. 65 Select Computer To Install Service On Dialog

By default, the **Destination Computer** box displays the machine name from which you launched the ECS setup program.

Optional: To choose a different computer, type the name of the computer or click **Browse** to select the computer.

TCP/IP PortThe **TCP/IP Port** box contains the port number that the ECS
uses to listen for the RPC requests. If the **TCP/IP Port** box is
set to <pefault>, the RPC system will select a port number
dynamically.

Destination Computer

Optional: Enter the port number the ECS should use in the **TCP/IP Port** box.

2 Once you are satisfied with the computer and port the ECS will be installed on, click **Next**.

The **Choose Destination Location** dialog appears.

| Choose Destination Loc | ation 🔀 |
|------------------------|---|
| | Setup will install the Enterprise Configuration Service to the directory shown below. To install to the specified directory, click Next. To install to a different directory, click Browse and select another directory. The path is relative to the selected computer (\\DDC-CORN-W2KP). |
| | Destination Directory C:\Program Files\BindView\ECS Browse |
| | < <u>Back Next</u> Cancel Help |



4: Installing the Enterprise Configuration Service 75

By default the **Destination Directory** box displays C:\Program Files\BindView\ECS as the installation path for the ECS. If you prefer, you can type a different path or click **Browse** to select a different path.

3 To install the ECS to the selected path, click Next. The Final Settings dialog appears (Fig. 67). The Final Settings dialog displays the machine and path name where the ECS will be installed.



Fig. 67 Final Settings Dialog

4 When you are satisfied with the choices you made, click **Next** to continue; otherwise, click **Back** to return to the appropriate page of the wizard and make changes.

The **Installation Status** dialog appears and displays the actions being taken to install the ECS.

| Installation Status | | | × |
|---------------------|---|--|---|
| Installation Status | Setup is installing the Enterpri of the installation are shown to installation. Computers DOC-CORN-W2KP | se Configuration Service. The results lefow. Click Cancel to abort Results Copying the setup file (J:\BuildArch | × |
| | Detail DOC-CORN-W2KP: Copyin (J:\BuildArchive\Sagittarius OkInstallSet\by-Control for V target computer | g the setup file ,20020625.5 agittarius. 7,20,303.10 /indows\ECS\data1.cab) to the Cancel Help | |

Fig. 68 Installation Status Dialog

When the installation is complete, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears.

| Setup Complete | | X |
|----------------|--|--|
| J | Setup has finished installing Er results of the installation are sh Setup. | nterprise Configuration Service. The lown below. Click Finish to complete |
| | Computers | Besults |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP | The installation completed succes |
| | | • |
| | <u></u> | |
| (Constant) | ☐ Detail The installation completed su | uccessfully. |
| | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack Finish | Cancel Help |



5 Click **Finish** to close the dialog and exit the wizard.

Note: When installing the ECS and Query Engine on a Windows 2000 native domain DC that is not a PDC emulator, an error message may appear stating that "the service did not respond to the start or control request in a timely fashion." This is because Windows 2000 does not allow forcing synchronization of domains. If this occurs, you should manually start the service using Windows native tools or the bv-Config utility.

Installing the ECS

Installing Query Engine Services

| In This Chapter | Query Engine Services | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|-----|
| • | Installing a Master Query Engine | |
| | Installing a Slave Query Engine | 94 |
| | Silently Installing a Query Engine | 104 |
| | Upgrading a Query Engine | 107 |
| | | |

5

5: Installing Query Engine Services 79

| Query Engine Services | After you have installed the Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS), you must install one or more Query Engine services. If you currently have a previously installed Query Engine earlier versions of bv-Control for Windows or NOSadmin® for Windows NT®, please consult the <i>bv-Control for Windows Upgrade Guide</i> for information on upgrading. This chapter explains how to install a Master Query Engine (Master), Slave Query Engine (Slave), and how to upgrade the Query Engine. For information on how to upgrade the Query Engine, refer to "Upgrading a Query Engine" on page 107. |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Installing a Master Query Engine | A Master Query Engine receives all data collected from the Slave Query Engines and the Data Collection Agents (DCA) used by those Slaves assigned to it. Use the bv-Config utility or the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard to install a Master Query Engine. |
| | To collect data from every domain in your network enterprise, you must install at least one Master Query Engine in every domain from which you want to collect data. When you install a Master Query Engine, a Slave Query Engine is also automatically installed. If you want to improve data collection performance, you can install additional Slave Query Engines within a Domain. |
| | Generally speaking, you should install a single Master Query Engine within each Domain. |
| | Note: Depending on your Domain configuration and network layout, installing a single Master Query Engine in a Domain may not be the optimal configuration for your environment. For further information regarding Query Engine setup for your specific environment, please contact BindView Technical Support (see "Contacting BindView" on page 18). |
| | When you install a Query Engine, you must be logged on either as a member of the Local Admins group on the machine where you are installing the Query Engine, or as a member of the Domain Admins group for that domain. When possible, you should be logged in as a Domain Admin when installing Query Engines. |
| | At a minimum, you must supply the Query Engine with these Local Admin credentials. The resulting Query Engine will be able to collect complete information on the machine on which it is installed and other machines where its credentials are also a member of the Local Admins group, and a minimum of information on other machines in the domain. To collect information on other machines in the domain, you must install additional Slave Query Engines, supplying credentials that are in the Local Admins group on each host machine. |

• To start the bv-Config utility

- 1 Choose **bv-Config** from the BindView RMS group in the Windows **Start** menu, or run the BindView RMS Console. In the Console tree, expand the bv-Control for Windows container.
- **2** Open the Configuration folder.
- **3** In the Details pane, double-click the bv-Config icon.

If this is your first time to run bv-Config, you will be prompted to choose filtering options on the **Computer Filtering Options** dialog.

| Computer Filtering Options | × |
|--|-------------------------|
| Networking Primary Domain Controller Backup Domain Controllers Master Domain Browsers Servers Servers Work stations | OK Cancel Help |
| Workstations Computer Accounts Services Microsoft SQL Server Running Time Source Service Running Dial-In Service Running | Select All Clear All |
| Query Engines & Support Services ✓ Master Query Engines ✓ Slave Query Engines ✓ Support Services Installed | |



4 Select the desired options and click **OK**.

The domain/machine view of the bv-Config utility window appears.

| Object Action View Help Pa THE THE PARAMETERS Parameters </th |
|---|
| P₂ Image: Constant of the second |
| Image: System 2 Computer Name Type Comment Image: System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 Image: System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 Image: System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 Image: System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 System 2 |
| LNT-BOLZANO-2KA A.B.C.D.NET SO ONT-ITALY |
| 🔁 🔯 A.B.C.D.NET |
| 🗄 🛃 ONT-ITALY |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| Deady NUM Thursday March 25, 2004, 12:57, DM 1 abject/a |

Fig. 71 bv-Config Utility Window – Domain/Machine View

To view the machines in a domain, click the plus sign (+) to the left of the domain name icon, or double-click the domain name. The machines that are members of the selected domain are indented beneath the domain.

- ▶ To select a host for the master query engine
 - **1** Select the computer where you want to install a Master Query Engine.

| + by-Config - SOUTHWESTERNCOL - \\ANTONITO | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| Object Action view Help | | |
| ≞ 1÷ 1≣ 🗰 😰 | 8 | |
| 🖃 🗊 A.B.C.D.E.F.G | Item Name | Comment |
| - 🥵 LNT-BOLZANO-2KA | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy |
| 🗄 👰 A.B.C.D.NET | 😽 AT Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs |
| 🕀 🛃 QNT-ITALY | Audit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information |
| SOUTHWESTERNCOL | Unite to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine |
| | 🗱 Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules |
| | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log |
| | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log |
| | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - Security | Security Event Log |
| | Event Log - System | System Event Log |
| | 💯 Groups | View/Edit Groups |
| | 🛃 Install Query Engine | Install a New Query Engine |
| | Processes . | View Running Processes |
| | 🙀 Product File Versions | Displays the versions of all the bv-Control for Windows component f_{\cdots} |
| | Query Engine Diagnostics - Master | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | 💑 Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | Query Engine Settings | View/Edit the Query Engine Settings |
| | Services | View/Edit Services |
| | Shares | View/Edit Shares |
| | Support Service Settings | Change BindView Support Service Settings for Last Logon caching. |
| | Uninstall BindView Support Service | Uninstalls the BindView Support Service from this machine |
| | Uninstall Query Engine | Uninstall an existing Query Engine |
| | William SindView Query Engine | Upgrade the currently installed BindView Query Engine with a newer |
| | User Rights | View/Edit User Rights |
| | 🖸 Users | View/Edit Users |
| Ready | | NUM Thursday, March 25, 2004 01:02 PM 26 object(s) |

Fig. 72 bv-Config Utility Window – Machine View.

The right-hand component of the bv-Config utility displays various icons. These icons indicate the actions you can perform or the information you can view for the chosen machine. The **Comment** column to the right contains a description of the actions that occur when the icon is double-clicked.

One of the options for all machines is to install a new Query Engine.

2 Double-click the P Install Query Engine icon, or right-click the machine on which you want to install the Query Engine service and select Install Query Engine.

The **Welcome** dialog for the Query Engine service setup program appears.



Fig. 73 Welcome Dialog

3 Read the information provided in the dialog, and click **Next**.

The **Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To** dialog appears.

| Select Domain/Workgro | pup To Install To |
|-----------------------|--|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to this Domain/Workgroup. To install to this Domain/Workgroup, click Next. To install to a different Domain/Workgroup, click Browse and select another Domain Murk group. You can choose not to install |
| | Enterprise Configuration Service |
| | DOC:CORN-W2KP |
| | Bepotting Domain/Workgroup |
| | |
| | < <u>Back</u> <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help |



4 By default, the Enterprise Configuration Service box displays the ECS the bv-Config utility is using and the domain where the Query Engine is located. Use these default items, or click the browse (...) buttons to locate another ECS or Domain. When you're ready to proceed, click Next. The Select Computers To Install On dialog appears, as shown in Fig. 75 on page 84. To set up the query engine on the selected computer(s) The Select Computer(s) To Install On dialog appears.

| Select Computer(s) To I | nstall On | X |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| Select Computer(s) To I | nstall On Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to the selected computers. To install to these computers, click Next. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Available Computers AACEMAN AACEMAN AACER AT00902030 AT0490140 AT0590918 AT0990959 AT0990959 AT2220951 | X |
| | < <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel Help | |

Fig. 75 Select Computer(s) To Install On Dialog

The computer(s) you chose from the bv-Config window, or the computer on which the **bv-Control for Windows Config Wizard** is running appears in the **Selected Computers** list. These selections cannot be changed from this dialog.

Caution: If installing to a file allocation table (FAT) file system, a warning dialog appears. Installing on a FAT file system can compromise file security. If this is acceptable, click **OK**.

5 Click **Next** to proceed.

The Service Account Information dialog appears.

| Service Account Information | × |
|---|---|
| Setup will create a special secure user account in the domain for the Query Engine to use for data collection. This account must be a member of the domain/trusted domain for which the Query Engine will be reporting. Service Account | |
| < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel Help | |

| Fig. 76 | Service | Account | Information | Dialog |
|---------|---------|---------|-------------|--------|
|---------|---------|---------|-------------|--------|

This dialog enables you to create a service account that allows advanced security access to certain network data.

84 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

To set up the service account

1 Select a domain, then enter a user name and password and confirm the password.

Note: A warning message will appear if fewer than 7 characters are used in the **Password** field. Click **OK** to proceed.

2 Click Next.

The **Query Engine Settings - Network Caching** dialog appears (Fig. 77).

Network Caching The Master Query Engine maintains a cache of machine information which is periodically updated from the network at a time interval you specify. This cache includes basic machine information necessary to efficiently process a report, such as each machine's type (workstation, server, PDC, or BDC) and status (up or down). The cache update uses free CPU time to collect its data and yields resources to other processes as needed.

| Query Engine Settings - N | etwork Caching | × |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| | The BindView Query Engine maintains a cache of network information which is periodically updated, and can maintain a cache of user information. User information caching is recommended for sites with large user databases. The intervals below indicate periods of time in minutes between updates. Network Cache Update Frequency Update Interval: | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel Help | |

Fig. 77 Query Engine Settings – Network Caching

The number entered in the **Update Interval** box indicates the number of minutes between the beginning of an update and the beginning of the next update. Caching this information is especially beneficial for large networks, because information is updated on a regular basis. The default interval period is 240 minutes.

• To set the update interval

1 Accept the default time frequency or, in the **Update Interval** box, enter the number of minutes the Query Engine should wait between the beginning of each network update. You may also use the up and down arrows to set the desired time interval.

Note: The **Query Engine Settings - Network Caching** dialog provides basic caching options. Advanced update options are available using the **Cache** tab of the **Query Engine Settings** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For information on setting advanced caching options, see "Cache Tab" on page 163.

User Caching The Master Query Engine can optionally maintain a cache of user information that is periodically updated from the network. This information includes basic user properties, except passwords, that are stored in the NT Security Account Manager (SAM) database.

The number entered in the **Update Interval** box indicates the number of minutes between the beginning of an update and the beginning of the next update. If you have a site with a large number of users, you should use this option. Without using it, the amount of time required to gather user data may be substantially increased. The default interval period is 240 minutes.

Note: If you install the Query Engine service on a PDC or a BDC, the service (by default) collects user data from the PDC or BDC to which it is installed. This provides faster updates and less network traffic.

To change the domain controller from which a Query Engine service updates its user cache after the service is installed, use the **Advanced User Cache Options** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For instructions on setting the domain controllers for user caching, see "To set advanced user cache options" on page 167.

To set user caching

- **1** Click the **Enable** box.
- 2 Accept the default time interval, or enter the number of minutes you want the service to wait between the beginning of one update and the beginning of the next update in the Update Interval box. You may also use the up and down arrows to select the Update Interval.

Note: The **Query Engine Settings - User Caching** dialog provides basic caching options. Advanced update options are available using the **Cache** tab of the **Query Engine Settings** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For information on setting advanced caching options, see "Cache Tab" on page 163.

Selecting a Machine Port

Optionally, the Query Engine allows communications over a specified communication port. This feature is useful when it is necessary to communicate with a Query Engine over a firewall.

| Query Engine Settings - Select Machine Port | | | × |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| The BindView Query Engine can be configured to communicate using a specified TCP/IP port. Computer TCP Port DOC-CORN-W2KP <default></default> | | to communicate | |
| | | Assign |] |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | Help | |

Fig. 78 Query Engine Settings – Select Machine Port

To define the communications port

- **1** Select one or more Query Engines from the **Computer** list.
- 2 Click Assign.

The **Assign IP Ports** dialog appears.



Fig. 79 Assign IP Ports Dialog

3 Enter the port number used to communicate with the Query Engine in the **Port Number** box.

Note: This number will be assigned to all selected Query Engines. If empty, the port number will be dynamically determined by the RPC subsystem. For more information on how to assign port settings, refer to "Port Settings" on page 150.

4 Click OK.

The **Query Engine Settings – Select Machine Port** dialog re-appears.

5 Click Next.

The Select Destination Directories dialog appears (Fig. 80).

Selecting a Destination Directory

The **Select Destination Directories** dialog enables you to choose the directory in which to install the Query Engine service files. The default directory is C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE.

| Select Destination Directories | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine(s) to directory(s). To install to this directory, click Next different directory, click Browse and select anott The path is relative to the selected computer. | o the following To install to a her directory. | |
| | Destination Directory | Computer | |
| | C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE | DOC-CORN-W2 | |
| J | | | |
| | | | |
| | | Browse | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel | Help | |

Fig. 80 Select Destination Directories Dialog

To select a destination directory

6 If you choose to accept the default directory, Click **Next**. Proceed to Step 6 on page 90.

Warning: If you choose to install the Query Engine on a volume that uses FAT formatting rather than NTFS, the **Machine Verify Report** dialog appears. This indicates that the Query Engine directories cannot be fully secured on a FAT partition. For security reasons, BindView recommends that you install the Query Engine on an NTFS volume.

• To change the installation directory

1 Select the directory from the **Destination Directory** column.

2 Click **Browse**. The **Browse** dialog appears.



Fig. 81 Browse Dialog – Destination Directory

3 Select a directory from the **Directories** list or type a path name in the **Path** box.

Note: Volume icons with a yellow key in the top indicate an NTFS volume. For security reasons, we strongly recommend that you install the Query Engine on an NTFS volume.

4 Click **OK**. If the path you entered does not exist, the program warns that the directory does not exist and prompts you to accept creation of the directory. Click **Yes** to create the directory.

The directory you selected appears in the **Destination Directory** column of the **Select Destination Directories** dialog.

5 Click Next.

Warning: If you chose to install the Query Engine on a volume that uses FAT formatting rather than NTFS, the **Machine Verify Report** dialog appears. This indicates that the Query Engine directories cannot be fully secured on the FAT partition. For security reasons, BindView recommends that you install the Query Engine on an NTFS volume.

| Machine Verify Repo The following compute volumes. Do wish to p | ort Strination directories are not on NTFS roceed? |
|---|--|
| Computers | Results |
| | The directory (U: NQUeryEngine) is not on a NT |
| . ■ Detail | Þ |
| The directory (C:\Qu | ieryEngine) is not on a NTFS volume. |
| | 0K Cancel |



6 Click OK.

The Select Master/Slave Configuration dialog appears.

| Select Master/Slave Co | onfiguration | × |
|------------------------|--|---|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to the selected computers.Select which Query Engine(s) will be the Master(s). You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Slave Query Engines <u>M</u> aster Query Engines | |
| | ⇒ DOC-CORN-W2KP | |
| 000 | | 1 |
| | < <u>Back Next</u> > Cancel Help | |



The **Select Master/Slave Configuration** dialog (Fig. 83) allows you to select which machines you wish to designate as Master Query Engines or Slave Query Engines. Initially, all machines are placed in the Slave Query Engine list. To install a Master Query Engine, you must move the machine from the Slave Query Engine list to the Master Query Engine list.

• To designate a query engine as a master during installation

Perform the following steps to designate a selected machine as a Master Query Engine.

1 Select the machine from the **Slave Query Engines** list and click the right arrow button, or double-click the machine name.

The machine moves from the **Slave Query Engines** list to the **Master Query Engines** list.

2 Click Next.

The **Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines** dialog appears.

| Assign Slave Query Eng | ines to Master Query Engines | × |
|------------------------|--|----------------------|
| | Select which Slave Query Engine(s) to assign to the Master Query Engine(s). You can choose not to install by clicking. Cancel to exit Setup. | |
| | Slave Query Engines | Master Query Engines |
| | | DOC-CORN-W2KP |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help |



When installing a Master Query Engine, the **Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines** dialog displays the name of the machine to which you are installing the Master in both the **Slave Query Engines** and **Master Query Engines** lists. This is because when you install a Master, you also install a Slave, and the Slave is automatically assigned to the Master on the same computer.

The **Master Query Engines** list displays all Masters already installed in the domain, as well as the machine name where you are installing the new Master. A box appears to the left of each machine. By default, all boxes are selected. A selected box indicates that the Slave will be configured to collect data for each of the Masters selected in the **Master Query Engines** list.

• To assign slave query engines to master query engines

1 In the **Master Query Engines** list, click those boxes to the left of the Masters for which you do not want the Slave to collect data. The boxes that remain checked will be the Masters for which the Slave Query Engine will collect data.

From the left-hand component of the bv-Config window, click on the Slave Query Engine you are configuring. The **Master** **Query Engine** list will display the Master Query Engines that are assigned to the Slave Query Engine you selected.

2 Click Next. The Final Settings dialog appears (Fig. 85).

After you supply all necessary information for the Query Engine installation program, the **Final Settings** dialog displays the choices you made during installation setup.

| Final Settings | | × |
|----------------|---|------|
| | Target Domain: GRAIN Total Number of Query Engines being installed: 1 Computer: DOC-CORN-W2KP Directory: C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE ActiveAdmin Local Group: BindView QE Users Service Account Username: byntge Service Account Domain: GRAIN TCP/IP Port: CDefault> Vetwork Caching Frequency: 30 minutes User Caching: Disabled User Caching Frequency: 45 minutes Password Security: Disabled | 1 |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel | Help |

Fig. 85 Final Settings Dialog

- Review the settings. If any corrections are necessary, use the Back button to return to the dialog that requires changes.
 Make the desired changes, and click Next until you return to the Final Settings dialog.
- 4 Click Next. The Installation Status dialog appears.

| Installation Status | | | × |
|---------------------|--|---|----------|
| | Setup is installing the BindVie installation are shown below. | w Query Engine. The results of the Click Cancel to abort installation. | 3 |
| | Computers | Results | _ |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Adding rights to Service user ac | 0 |
| | 4 | | • |
| | - Detail- | | <u> </u> |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP: Adding | rights to Service user account | |
| | | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help | |

Fig. 86 Installation Status Dialog

You may be prompted to synchronize one or more Master Query Engines.

5 If the **Synchronizing Master Query Engines** dialog appears, select the Query Engines to synchronize and click **Synchronize**.

| R Synchronizing Master Query Engine | (s) X |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ØDOC-CORN-₩2KP | Abort Synchronize |
| | Select All Clear All |
| | |



When the installation is finished, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears, indicating whether or not the installation was successful.

| Setup Complete | | 2 | < |
|----------------|--|--|---|
| 1 | Setup has finished installing BindV the installation are shown below. C | iew Query Engine. The results of Dick Finish to complete Setup. | |
| | Computers | Results | |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP | The installation completed suc | |
| | ✓ | | |
| 66 | The installation completed succe | essfully. | |
| | < Back Finish | Cancel Help | |

Fig. 88 Setup Complete Dialog

6 Read the information supplied in the **Results** column and the **Detail** box, and click **Finish**.

The bv-Config utility window or the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard appears, depending on how you began installing the Master Query Engine.

After you install a Master Query Engine, you may want to change some of the default settings based on your network setup. For information about Query Engine Service settings and modifying them, see "Configuring Query Engine Settings" on page 159.

| Installing a Slave Query Engine | A Master Query Engine receives data collected from the Slave Query Engines assigned to it, as well as from its own Data Collection Agents. To speed the data collection process, you may want to install additional Slave Query Engines. Use the bv-Config utility to install a Slave Query Engine. | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Selecting a Host for the Slave | 1 | Select the cor Engine. | | want to install a Slave Query |
| | | ≞ 🗄 🖽 😰 | 1 🔁 🖻 | |
| | | 🖃 🗊 A.B.C.D.E.F.G | Item Name | Comment |
| | | ENT-BOLZANO-2KA | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy |
| | | 🗄 👹 A.B.C.D.NET | Han Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs |
| | | 🗄 🛃 QNT-ITALY | Audit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information |
| | | | Demote to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine |
| | | | Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules |
| | | | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log |
| | | | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log |
| | | | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log |
| | | | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log |
| | | | Event Log - Security | System Event Log |
| | | | Groups | View/Edit Groups |
| | | | Install Ouery Engine | Install a New Ouery Engine |
| | | | Processes | View Running Processes |
| | | | Roduct File Versions | Displays the versions of all the by-Control for Windows component f |
| | | | Query Engine Diagnostics - Master | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | | | Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | | | Query Engine Settings | View/Edit the Query Engine Settings |
| | | | Services | View/Edit Services |
| | | | Shares | View/Edit Shares |
| | | | Support Service Settings | Change BindView Support Service Settings for Last Logon caching. |
| | | | Uninstall BindView Support Service | Uninstalls the BindView Support Service from this machine |
| | | | Connistali Query Engine | Uninstall an existing Query Engine |
| | | | Upgrade Bindview Query Engine | upgrade the currently installed BindView Query Engine with a newer View/Edit User Diabts |
| | | | G Likers | View/Edit Users |
| | | J | | NUM Thursday March 25, 2004, 04,00, DM, 05, 11, 14, 2 |
| | | Ready | | NUM Inursday, March 25, 2004 01:02 PM [26 object(s) // |

bv-Config Utility Window - Machine View Fig. 89

The right-hand component of the bv-Config utility window displays various icons. These icons indicate the actions you can perform or the information you can view for the chosen machine. The **Comment** column to the right of the icons contains a description of the actions that occur when the icon is double-clicked. One of the options for all machines is to install a new Query Engine.

Double-click the 🚝 Install Query Engine icon, or right-click the 2 machine on which you want to install the Query Engine service and select the **Install Query Engine** command.

The **Welcome** dialog for the Query Engine Service setup program is displayed.

3 Read the information provided on the **Welcome** dialog, and click **Next.** The **Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To** dialog appears.

| Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to this Domain/Workgroup. To install to this Domain/Workgroup, click Next. To install to a different Domain/Workgroup, click Browse and select another Domain/Workgroup. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. | | |
| | Beporting Domain/Workgroup | | |
| | | | |

Fig. 90 Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To Dialog

- 4 By default, the Enterprise Configuration Service box displays the ECS the bv-Config utility is using and the domain where the Query Engine is located. Use these default items, or click the browse (...) buttons to locate another ECS or Domain. When you're ready to proceed, click Next.
- To set up the query engine on the selected computer(s)
 - 1 The Select Computer(s) To Install On dialog appears.

| Select Computer(s) To Install On | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|--|
| Select Computer(s) To I | nstall On Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to the selected computers. To install to these computers, click Next, You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Available Computers AACEMAN AACEMAN AACER AT0002030 AT0490140 AT0590918 AT0958135 AT0980959 AT2220951 | X | |
| | (<u>Back</u>) (<u>Next</u>) (Cancel Help) | _ | |

Fig. 91 Select Computer To Install On Dialog

2 The computer(s) you chose from the bv-Config utility window appears in the **Selected Computers** list. The selected computers cannot be changed from this location. Click **Next**.

Caution: If installing to a FAT file system, a warning dialog appears. Installing on a FAT file system can compromise file security. If this is acceptable, click **OK**.

The Service Account Information dialog appears.



This dialog enables you to create a service account that allows advanced security access to certain network data.

To set up the service account

- 1 Enter a user name and password and confirm the password. If the user name you entered already exists, you will be prompted to verify that you want to use the existing account.
- 2 Click Next. The Query Engine Settings Network Caching dialog appears (Fig. 93 on page 97).

Network Caching The Master Query Engine maintains a cache of machine information which is periodically updated from the network at a time interval you specify. This cache includes basic machine information necessary to efficiently process a report, such as each machine's type (workstation, server, PDC, or BDC) and status (up or down).

The cache update uses free CPU time to collect its data and yields resources to other processes as needed.

| Query Engine Settings - | Network Caching | × |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| | The BindView Query Engine maintains a cache of network information which is periodically updated, and can maintain a cache of user information. User information caching is recommended for sites with large user databases. The intervals below indicate periods of time in minutes between updates. Network Cache Update Frequency Update Interval: | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help | |

Fig. 93 Query Engine Settings – Network Caching

Note: Slave Query Engines do not cache data; however, you may want to configure Slaves for caching in case you later want to promote them to be Masters. For information on promoting a Slave Query Engine to a Master Query Engine, see "Promoting a Slave Query Engine" on page 219.

The number entered in the **Update Interval** box indicates the number of minutes between the beginning of an update and the beginning of the next update. Caching this information is especially beneficial for large networks, because information is updated on a regular basis. The default interval period is 30 minutes.

► To set the update interval

1 Accept the default time interval or, in the **Update Interval** box, enter the number of minutes the Query Engine should wait between the beginning of each network update. You may also use the up and down arrows to set the desired time interval.

Note: The **Query Engine Settings - Network Caching** dialog provides basic caching options. Advanced update options are available using the **Cache** tab of the **Query Engine Settings** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For information on setting advanced caching options, see "Cache Tab" on page 163.

User Caching Master Query Engines can optionally maintain a cache of user information that is periodically updated from the network. This information includes basic user properties, except passwords, that are stored in the NT Security Account Manager (SAM) database. Slave Query Engines do not cache data; however, you may want to configure Slaves for caching in case you later want to promote them to be Masters.

The number entered in the **Update Interval** box indicates the number of minutes between the beginning of an update and the beginning of the next update. If you have a site with a large number of users, you should use this option. Without using it, the amount of time required to gather user data may be substantially increased. The default interval period is 45 minutes.

If you install the Query Engine service on a PDC or a BDC, the service (by default) collects user data from the PDC or BDC to which it is installed. This provides faster updates and less network traffic.

Note: To change the domain controller from which a Query Engine service updates its user cache after the service is installed, use the **Advanced User Cache Options** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For instructions on setting the domain controllers for user caching, see "To set advanced user cache options" on page 167.

To set user caching

- **1** Click the **Enable User Caching** box.
- 2 Accept the default time interval, or in the **Update Interval** box, enter the number of minutes you want the service to wait between the beginning of one update and the beginning of the next update. You may also use the up and down arrows to select the **Update Interval**.

Note: The **Query Engine Settings - User Caching** dialog provides basic caching options. Advanced update options are available using the **Cache** tab of the **Query Engine Settings** dialog accessed through the bv-Config utility. For information on setting advanced caching options, see "Cache Tab" on page 163.

3 Click Next.

The **Query Engine Settings - Select Machine Port** dialog appears.

| Query Engine Settings - Select Machine Port | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| The BindView Query Engine can be configured to communication using a specified TCP/IP port. | | to communicate | |
| | | Assign |] |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | Help | |



► To define the communications port

- **1** Select one or more Query Engines from the **Computer** list.
- 2 Click Assign.

The **Assign IP Ports** dialog appears.



Fig. 95 Assigning IP Ports Dialog

3 Enter the port number in the **Port Number** box.

Note: This number will be assigned to all selected Query Engines. If empty, the port number will be dynamically determined by the RPC subsystem. For more information on how to assign port settings, refer to "Port Settings" on page 150.

4 Click **OK**.

The **Query Engine Settings – Select Machine Port** dialog re-appears.

5 Click Next.

The **Select Destination Directories** dialog appears (Fig. 96 on page 100).

Selecting a Destination Directory

The **Select Destination Directories** dialog enables you to choose the directory in which to install the Query Engine service files. The default directory is C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE.

| Select Destination Directories | | | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|---|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine(s) to directory(s). To install to this directory, click Next different directory, click Browse and select anoth The path is relative to the selected computer. | o the following . To install to a her directory. | |
| | Destination Directory | Computer | |
| A Committeer W | C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE | DOC-WHEAT-W | |
| | < | | |
| | | Browse | |
| | | | _ |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | Help | |

Fig. 96 Select Destination Directories Dialog

1 If you choose to accept the default directory, click **Next**.

Warning: If you choose to install the Query Engine on a volume that uses FAT formatting rather than NTFS, the **Machine Verify Report** dialog appears. This indicates that the Query Engine directories cannot be fully secured on FAT partitions. BindView recommends that you install the Query Engine on NTFS.

| Select Master/Slave Co | nfiguration Setup will install the BindView Query Engine to the selected computers.Select which Query Engine(s) will be the Master(s). You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. | × |
|------------------------|---|---|
| | Slave Query Engines Master Query Engines | |
| | < <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel Help | _ |

Fig. 97 Select Master/Slave Configuration Dialog

The **Select Master/Slave Configuration** dialog appears.

• To designate a query engine as a slave during installation

The **Select Master/Slave Configuration** dialog (Fig. 97) allows you to select which machines you wish to designate as Master Query Engines or Slave Query Engines. Initially, all machines are placed in the Slave Query Engine list. To install a Master Query Engine, you must move the machine from the Slave Query Engine list to the Master Query Engine list.

1 Click **Next** to install a Slave Query Engine to the machine that appears in the **Slave Query Engines** list.

The **Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines** dialog appears.

| Assign Slave Query Eng | ines to Master Query Engine | Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines | | | |
|------------------------|--|---|---|--|--|
| Assign Slave Query Eng | Ines to Master Query Engine Select which Slave Query Engine Query Engine(s). You can choos Cancel to exit Setup. Slave Query Engines DOCAVHEATAW2KS | rs he(s) to assign to the Master se not to install by clicking. Master Query Engines ₩DOC-CORN-W2KP | × | | |
| | | | | | |
| | < Back Next > | Cancel Help | | | |
| | | | | | |



The **Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines** dialog displays the name of the machine where you are installing the Slave Query Engine in the **Slave Query Engines** list. The **Master Query Engines** list displays all Masters already installed in the domain. A box appears to the left of each Master Query Engine. By default, all boxes are selected, indicating that the Slave(s) you are installing will be available to each of those Masters for data collection.

2 In the **Master Query Engines** list, click those boxes to the left of the Master Query Engines for which you do not want the Slave(s) to collect data. The boxes that remain checked will be the Masters for which the Slave Query Engine(s) will collect data.

From the left-hand component of the bv-Config utility window, click on the Slave Query Engine you are configuring. The **Master Query Engine** list will display the Master Query Engines that are assigned to the Slave Query Engine you selected.

3 Click **Next**. The **Final Settings** dialog appears (Fig. 99).

After you supply all necessary information for the Query Engine installation program, the **Final Settings** dialog displays the choices you made during installation setup.

| Final Settings | | × |
|----------------|--|------|
| | The final settings for the BindView Query Engine Service are: Target Domain: GRAIN Total Number of Query Engines being installed: 1 Computer: DDC-V/HEAT-W/2KS Directory: C: VProgram Files/SindView/BVNTQE ActiveAdmin Local Group: BindView QE Users Service Account Domain: GRAIN TCP/IP Port: <default> Network Caching Frequency: 30 minutes User Caching Frequency: 45 minutes</default> | • |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 99 Final Settings Dialog

- **1** Review the settings in the dialog. If any corrections are necessary, use the **Back** button to return to the dialog that requires changes.
- 2 Make the necessary changes, then click **Next** to return to the **Final Settings** dialog.
- 3 Click Next. The Installation Status dialog appears.

| Installation Status | | × |
|---------------------|---|--|
| | Setup is installing the BindView installation are shown below. Cli | Query Engine. The results of the ck Cancel to abort installation. |
| | Computers | Results |
| | DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | Checking Current User's Securit |
| | • | |
| | Detail | |
| | DOC-WHEAT-W2KS: Checkir | ng Current User's Security |
| | | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help |

Fig. 100 Installation Status Dialog

You may be prompted to synchronize one or more Master Query Engines.

4 If the **Synchronizing Master Query Engines** dialog appears, select the Query Engines to synchronize and click **Synchronize**.

| Synchronizing Master Query Engine | (s) X |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ✓DOC-CORN-W2KP | Abort Synchronize |
| | Select All Clear All |
| | |



5 Click **Close** when the Synchronization is complete.

When the installation is finished, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears, indicating whether or not the installation was successful.

| Setup Complete | | × |
|----------------|---|--|
| | Setup has finished installing BindViet the installation are shown below. Clic Computers | w Query Engine. The results of ck Finish to complete Setup. |
| Y | | The installation completed s |
| | Detail The installation completed success | sfully. |
| | < Back Finish | Cancel Help |



6 Read the information supplied in the **Results** column and the **Detail** box, and click **Finish**. The bv-Config utility window is displayed.

After you install a Slave Query Engine, you may want to change some of the default settings based on your network setup. For information about modifying Query Engine Service settings, see "Configuring Query Engine Settings" on page 159.

| Silently Installing a Query Engine | bv-Control for Windows allows you to install a query engine silently. To use the silent install feature, you have to apply the install package onto the target computer and start the silent installation process. This can be done via a third party product such as Microsoft SMS. In order for the silent install to work, you will need to specify a setup configuration file for the silent install. This file will contain all the information necessary for the installation. The setup configuration file must use the .ini format and can have any name. | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Preparing for the silent installation | Before you begin the silent install, you must first create the setup file. This file will include information such as the ECS settings, reporting domain, and service account. In the bv-Control for Windows/Query Engine folder is an example .ini file for you to pattern your setup file after. This file is named SilentInstall.ini.Example . The following information is what you will find in the example file. | | | |
| | Note: The Service Account you specify must be an existing or new account, as the Service Account is not created during the silent installation. The Service Account will be specified in the CMD file, as explained in the following section. | | | |
| | [Upgrade] | | | |
| | KeepSetting=0 | | | |
| | The KeepSetting value can be either 0 or 1. If the value is 0, the install uses the settings specified in the .INI file. Otherwise, the upgrade takes place without changing the settings. If no previous installation is detected, the setting is ignored. | | | |
| | [ECS] | | | |
| | HostName=mymachinex1 | | | |
| | NBName=MYMACHINEX1 | | | |
| | IPAddr:00.000.00.000 | | | |
| | Port= | | | |
| | [Report Domain] | | | |
| | RptDomain=mydomain | | | |
| | Specify the reporting domain or workgroup name in Windows NT4 format. | | | |
| | [Groups] | | | |
| | AdminLocalGroup=Bindview Administrators | | | |
| | QEUserLocalGroup=Bindview QE Users | | | |

[Service Account]

AddToDomainAdmin=1

The value entered here can be either 1 or 0. If a value of 1 is specified, the Service Account will be added into the domain admin group of the reporting domain.

[Cache Settings] MachineInterval=240 UserEnabed=0

UserInterval=240

Specify the value in minutes.

[TCP Port] PortNumber=

[Firewall Settings]

EnableRegistration=1

ScopeType=2

ScopeList=192.168.0.0/255.255.0.0,10.20.20.20/255.0.0.0

These settings will enable firewall registration in the Windows Firewall that is included with Windows XP Service Pack 2.

EnableRegistration = When set to 0, firewall registration will not be enabled; 1 will enable it.

ScopeType = When set to 0, scope type is set to Any Computer; when set to 1, scope type is set to My Network; when set to 2, will be set to the custom scope list specified in the last value.

[Target Directory] DestDir="c:\bindview\bvntqe"

[Role]

IsMQE=1

The value entered here can be either 1 or 0. A value of 1 means that that Query Engine to be installed will be a Master.

[Used By MQEs]

MQEList="mymachinex1", "mymachinex2", "mymachinex3"

5: Installing Query Engine Services 105

Specify the list of Master Query Engines that the installed Query Engine will be used by.

Once all of the information is added to the file, save the information as an .ini file. This file will be needed for the silent installation.

Performing the silent installation In the bv-Control for Windows/Query Engine folder, there is an example silent installation file for you to follow. This file is named SilentInstall.cmd.Example. The information in this file tells you the commands needed to start the silent installation with a specified service account, username, and password, as well as how to start a silent installation using the LocalSystem as the service account.

During the silent installation, an install log is created for you to view successful and failed installations. On machines running Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003, the install log can be found under the Temp directory of the profile of the logged on user. The log file will be named according to the date and time of the installation.

To start silent installation with a specified service account, username, and password

1 From the command line, enter the following:

Setup -VI -INI: <IniFileFullName> -USR: <username> -PWD: <password> -S -R

This initiates and completes the silent installation for a service account, with a username and password.

To start silent installation using LocalSystem as the service account

1 From the command line, enter the following:

Setup -VI -INI: <IniFileFullName> -S -R

Running this command, initiates and completes the silent installation using LocalSystem as the service account.

In certain cases, you may have to perform these additional steps to finish the silent install.

- If the account the Query Engine was installed under does not have rights to the ECS database, the Query Engine must be manually added to it.
- In all cases, the installation of a Master Query Engine will not initiate a synchronization and therefore, will not be usable until synchronization occurs. This has to be manually initiated from the ECS menu from within bv-Config.

Silently Upgrading Query Engines You can also use this method to perform a silent upgrade of your guery engines.

• To perform a silent upgrade

- **1** From the command line, enter the following:
- 106 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Setup -VU -S -R

This initiates and completes the silent upgrade for a query engine. All previously configured settings will be kept during the upgrade.

Upgrading a Query Engine If you currently have a previously installed Query Engine from the BindView RMS Console, you must upgrade the Query Engine before the BindView RMS Console will be able to communicate with the Query Engine. You must use the bv-Config utility to upgrade Query Engine services.

To upgrade a BindView Query Engine

1 Open the bv-Config utility and select the machine that contains the Query Engine you want to upgrade.

| by-Config - SOUTHWESTERN | COL - \\ANTONITO | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Object Action View Help | | |
| ≞ 17 88 mm @ 9 | 5 🗈 | |
| 🖃 🗊 A.B.C.D.E.F.G 🛛 🛛 | tem Name | Comment |
| ENT-BOLZANO-2KA | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy |
| 🕀 📆 A.B.C.D.NET 🛛 🙀 | AT Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs |
| E QNT-ITALY | Audit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information |
| SOUTHWESTERNCOL | Demote to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine |
| | Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules |
| | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log |
| | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log |
| | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - Security | Security Event Log |
| | Event Log - System | System Event Log |
| | Groups | View/Edit Groups |
| | Install Query Engine | Install a New Query Engine |
| | 2 Processes | View Running Processes |
| | Product File Versions | Displays the versions of all the by-Control for Windows component f |
| | Query Engine Diagnostics - Master | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| \$ | Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| 1 | JQuery Engine Settings | View/Edit the Query Engine Settings |
| | Services | View/Edit Services |
| | Shares | View/Edit Shares |
| 1 | Support Service Settings | Change BindView Support Service Settings for Last Logon caching. |
| | Uninstall BindView Support Service | Uninstalls the BindView Support Service from this machine |
| | Uninstall Query Engine | Uninstall an existing Query Engine |
| | Upgrade BindView Query Engine | Upgrade the currently installed BindView Query Engine with a newer |
| 3 | User Rights | View/Edit User Rights |
|]£ | Users | View/Edit Users |
| Ready | | NUM Thursday, March 25, 2004 01:02 PM 26 object(s) |

Fig. 103 Selecting a Query Engine to Upgrade

2 Double-click the Upgrade BindView Query icon, or rightclick the machine on which you want to upgrade the Query Engine service and select the **Upgrade Query Engine** command. The **Welcome** dialog for the Query Engine service setup program appears.



Fig. 104 Welcome Dialog

3 Read the information provided on the **Welcome** dialog, and click **Next**.

The **Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To** dialog appears.

| Select Domain/Workgro | pup To Install To | |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine Upgrade to this Domain/Workgroup. To install to this Domain/Workgroup, click Next. To install to a different Domain/Workgroup, click Browse and select another Domain/Workgroup. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. | |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP Beporting Domain/Workgroup GRAIN << Back Next> Cancel Help | |



Since you are upgrading an existing Query Engine, the values in this dialog box are for your information only. You cannot change them.

4 Click Next.
- To select query engines to upgrade
 - 1 Click Next. The Select Computer(s) To Install On dialog appears.

| Select Computer(s) To 2 | Install On | × |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| Prece computer(s) to | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine Upgrade to the selected computers. To install to these computers, click Next. You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Available Computers Available Computers AACEMAN AACER AT0002030 AT0490140 AT099018 AT0956135 AT0988858 AT0990959 AT2220951 | |
| | < Back Next> Cancel Help | |

Fig. 106 Select Computer(s) To Install On Dialog

The computer(s) you chose from the bv-Config window displays in the **Selected Computers** list.

2 Click Next.

The **Upgrade** dialog appears.

| Upgrade | | × |
|--|--|--|
| | You have chosen to upgrade th installation(s). Choose whether t install the newer version of the E prompted for new settings. | e existing BindView Query Engine o retain all current settings and 3indView Query Engine or be |
| | Computer | Status |
| and and and a start of the star | DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | The currently installed version is (|
| M | | |
| 650 | | F |
| | Settings keep all current settings ar | nd upgrade now! |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help |

Fig. 107 Upgrade Dialog

The **Upgrade** dialog allows you to choose whether to retain all current settings and install the newer version of the BindView Query Engine or be prompted to set new settings.

To keep all current settings while upgrading the Query Engine, proceed to "To keep all current settings" on page 110.

To be prompted for all new settings while upgrading the Query Engine, proceed to "To be prompted for new settings when upgrading the Query Engine" on page 111.

To keep all current settings

- **3** From the **Upgrade** dialog, select the **keep all current settings and upgrade now!** option.
- 4 Click Next.

The Final Settings dialog appears.



Fig. 108 Final Settings Dialog

5 Review the settings and click **Next**.

The Installation Status dialog appears.



Fig. 109 Installation Status Dialog

When the upgrade is finished, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears, indicating whether or not the upgrade was successful.

| Setup Complete | | × |
|----------------|--|--|
| Setup Complete | Setup has finished installing Bind results of the installation are sho Setup. Computers L-TEMPE-NT4S | View Query Engine Upgrade. The wn below. Click Finish to complete Results The installation completed succ |
| 20 | Detail The installation completed sur < | ccessfully. |

Fig. 110 Setup Complete Dialog

6 Read the information supplied in the **Results** column and the **Detail** box, and click **Finish**. The bv-Config utility window is displayed.

To be prompted for new settings when upgrading the Query Engine

The following steps allow you to upgrade the Query Engine without retaining any settings. The upgrade utility will prompt you to select all new settings.

- **1** From the **Upgrade** dialog, click **Next**.
- 2 Ensure that the **keep all current settings and upgrade now!** option is *not* selected.

| The Service Account Information | dialog appears. |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| Service Account Information | × |

| Setup will create a special secure user account in the domain for the Query Engine to use for data collection. This account must be a member of the domain/trusted domain for which the Query Engine will be reporting. Service Account Service Account Add to Domain Admins group for the reporting domain GRAIN (strongly recommended) Domain GRAIN User name: | |
|--|--|
| Password: Confirm Password: | |
| < <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel Help | |

Fig. 111 Service Account Information Dialog

This dialog enables you to create a service account that allows advanced security access to certain network data.

• To set up the service account

- **1** Enter a user name and password and confirm the password.
- 2 Click Next.

The **Query Engine Settings - Network Caching** dialog appears.

Fig. 112 Setting Network Caching

• To set the update interval

3 Accept the default time interval or, in the **Update Interval** box, enter the number of minutes the Query Engine should wait between the beginning of each network update. You may also use the up and down arrows to select the **Update Interval**.

To set user caching

- 4 Click the **Enable User Caching** box.
- **5** Accept the default time interval, or in the **Update Interval** box, enter the number of minutes you want the service to wait between the beginning of one update and the beginning of the next update. You may also use the up and down arrows to select the **Update Interval**.
- 6 Click Next.

The **Query Engine Settings - Select Machine Port** dialog appears.

| Query Engine Settings - | Select Machine Port | | x |
|-------------------------|---|----------------|---|
| | The BindView Query Engine can be configured using a specified TCP/IP port. | to communicate | |
| | | Assign |] |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel | Help | |

Fig. 113 Query Engine Settings – Select Machine Port

• To define the communications port

- 7 Select one or more Query Engines from the **Computer** list.
- 8 Click Assign.

The **Assign IP Ports** dialog appears.

| Assign IP Ports for DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | × |
|------------------------------------|--------|
| TCP/IP port | ОК |
| Port number: Cefault> | Cancel |
| | |

Fig. 114 Assigning IP Ports Dialog

- **9** Enter the port number in the **Port Number** box.
- 10 Click OK.

The **Query Engine Settings – Select Machine Port** dialog re-appears.

11 Click Next.

| Select Destination Direc | tories | × |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| 2 | Setup will install the BindView Query Engine(s) to directory(s). To install to this directory, click Next different directory, click Browse and select anot The path is relative to the selected computer. | o the following . To install to a her directory. |
| | Destination Directory | Computer |
| | C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE | DOC-WHEAT-W |
| | ▲ | |
| | | Browse |
| | < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

The Select Destination Directories dialog appears.



12 Click Next.

The Select Master/Slave Configuration dialog appears.

| Select Master/Slave Co | nfiguration | | × |
|------------------------|---|--|---|
| | Setup will install the BindVie computers.Select which Qu You can choose not to insta <u>S</u> lave Query Engines | w Query Engine to the selected ery Engine(s) will be the Master(s). Il by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. <u>M</u> aster Query Engines | _ |
| | DUC-WHEAT-W2KS | → ~ | |
| 660 | < > | | • |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help | |

Fig. 116 Select Master/Slave Configuration Dialog

13 If you only want to upgrade a Slave Query Engine and not assign it to be the Master Query Engine, click **Next**.

Note: The product will automatically detect the Master Query Engine.

Optional: Select the machine from the **Slave Query Engines** list and click the right arrow button, or double-click the machine name.

The machine moves from the **Slave Query Engines** list to the **Master Query Engines** list.

The **Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines** dialog appears.

| Assign Slave Query Engines to Master Query Engines | | | × |
|--|---|--|---|
| | Select which Slave Query Engin Query Engine(s). You can choos Cancel to exit Setup. | e(s) to assign to the Master se not to install by clicking. | |
| | Slave Query Engines | Master Query Engines | |
| | | ✓DOC-CORN-W2KP | |
| | | | _ |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> | Cancel Help | |



14 Click Next.

The **Final Settings** dialog appears.

| Final Settings | | × |
|----------------|--|----|
| | The final settings for the BindView Query Engine Service are: Target Domain: GRAIN Total Number of Query Engines being installed: 1 Computer: DOC-WHEAT-W2KS Directory: C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE ActiveAdmin Local Group: BindView QE Users Currently Installed Version: 7.20.303.100 Service Account Username: bvntge Service Account Service Ac | 4 |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel He | lp |

- Fig. 118 Final Settings Dialog
- 15 Click Next.

| Installation Status | Setup is installing the BindView results of the installation are sh installation. | Query Engine Upgrade. The own below. Click Cancel to abort |
|---------------------|---|---|
| | Computers | Besults |
| | DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | Creating the directory tree and h |
| | Detail DOC-WHEAT-W2KS: Creatin shares | ing the directory tree and hidden |

16 The **Installation Status** dialog appears.

Fig. 119 Installation Status Dialog

The Synchronizing Master Query Engine(s) dialog appears.

| Synchronizing Master Query Engine | (s) X |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| ✓DOC-CORN-W2KP | Abort |
| | Synchronize |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | S <u>e</u> lect All |
| | Clear All |
| | |
| | |



17 Click Synchronize.

Anytime you make changes to the Query Engine, you must synchronize the Master Query Engine.

18 After synchronization, click **Close**.

When the upgrade is finished, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears, indicating whether or not the upgrade was successful.

| Setup Complete | | × |
|----------------|---|---|
| | Setup has finished installing BindVier results of the installation are shown to Setup. Computers DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | w Query Engine Upgrade. The below. Click Finish to complete Results The installation completed s |
| | Detail The installation completed success | sfully. |

Fig. 121 Setup Complete Dialog

19 Click Finish.

Upgrading a Query Engine

6 The BindView Support Service

| In This Chapter | Managing BindView Support Service | 120 |
|-----------------|---|-----|
| | Installing the Service Using bv-Config | 120 |
| | Installing Using the Support Service Executable | 125 |

| Managing BindView Support Service | The BindView Support Service is automatically installed on every machine where you install an Enterprise Configuration Service and a Query Engine service, as well as on any machine where you stop a process using the bv-Config utility. Domain Controllers (BDCs and PDCs) authenticate user logons. Domain Controllers do not report logon attempts to each other, therefore the Domain Controllers do not maintain a record of all user logon attempts. The BindView Query Engine does not have a primary source in each domain from which to gather last logon information. |
|---|--|
| | If you have last logon caching turned on and you run a last logon report, Query Engines retain previous last logon data, and only report changes from the previous Master Query Engine update. This can significantly decrease the time it takes to report last logon information. Therefore, it is best to install a Support Service on every BDC and PDC that authenticates users. |
| | If you intend to run last logon reporting, you should manually install the BindView Support Service on every BDC and PDC that will authenticate user logons. This chapter explains how to install the BindView Support Service using the bv-Config utility. For information on setting domain controllers from which to collect last logon data and the last logon update cache schedule, see "To set advanced user cache options" on page 167. |
| Installing the Service Using | The BindView Support Service can be installed from the ECS or Query Engine directory by launching the Support Service |

bv-Config 9

executable, **BVQESUPPORTSVC.EXE**, or from the bv-Config utility.

► To install the service using bv-Config utility

1 From any machine running bv-Config, select the machine on which you want to install the Support Service.

| Object / | Action View Help | · \\ANTONITO | |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| <u> </u> | Select Computer | | |
| | Install Query Engine | em Name | Comment |
| | opgrade Query Engine | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy |
| | Multi-Domain QE Upgrade | AT Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs |
| | Install Support Service | JAudit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information |
| | Detect Support Service | Demote to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a SI |
| - ⁵ | Detect Support Service | Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules |
| | Uninstall Query Engine | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log |
| | Uninstall ECS | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log |
| - | F.C | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log |
| _ | ECS , | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log |
| | Query Engine Migration | Event Log - Security | Security Event Log |
| _ | | 🖬 Event Log - System | System Event Log |
| | | 🕫 Groups | View/Edit Groups |
| | | 🛺 Install Query Engine | Install a New Query Engine |
| | | Processes | View Running Processes |
| | | Noduct File Versions | Displays the versions of all the by-Contro |
| | | Query Engine Diagnostics - Master | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Info |
| | | Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Infor |
| | | 🗟 Ouery Engine Settings | View/Edit the Ouery Engine Settings |
| | ŀ | Services | View/Edit Services |
| | | ٠ ـ ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| ostall Supr | port Service | NUM | Friday, March 26, 2004 03:46 PM 26 object(s) |

Fig. 122 Installing Support Services

2 From the bv-Config Action menu, select Install Support Service (Fig. 122).

The BindView Support Service setup program displays the **Welcome** dialog.

| ¥elcome | × |
|---------|---|
| | Welcome to the BindView Support Service Setup program. This program will install the BindView Support Service on your computer(s). It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law. |
| | < Back Next > Cancel Help |

Fig. 123 Welcome Dialog – BindView Support Service Setup

3 Read the information provided in the **Welcome** dialog, then click **Next**. The **Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To** dialog appears.

| Select Domain/Workgroup To Install To | | × |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| | Setup will install the BindView Support Service to this Domain/Workgroup. To install to this Domain/Workgroup, click Next. To install to a different Domain/Workgroup, click Browse and select another Domain/Workgroup. You can choose not to instal by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. | I |
| | Enterprise Configuration Service DOCCORNAW2KP Beporting Domain/Workgroup GRAIN < Back Next > Cancel Help | |



4 By default, the Enterprise Configuration Service box displays the ECS the bv-Config utility is using. Use the default items, or click the browse (...) buttons to locate another ECS or Domain. When you're ready to proceed, click Next. The Select Computer(s) To Install On dialog appears.

| Select Computer(s) To 1 | Install On | × |
|-------------------------|--|---|
| | Setup will install the BindView Support Service to the selected computers. To install to these computers, click Next You can choose not to install by clicking Cancel to exit Setup. Available Computers A A AACEMAN AACEMAN AACEMAN AAT090030 AT0490140 AT0590918 AT0930959 AT2220951 | |
| | < <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> Cancel Help | |

Fig. 125 Select Computer(s) To Install On Dialog

The machine you selected in the bv-Config utility is displayed in the **Selected Computers** list.

Note: You can select multiple machines and install the BindView Support Service simultaneously. To add a machine to the list of Selected Computers, click its name in the left-hand list, then click the right arrow (->) or double-click the computer's name.

| Computer Verification Results | | |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| | You have chosen to install the E selected computer(s). Click Can making changes on the target c continue the installation. | SindView Support Service to the cel to quit the Setup without omputer(s), or click Next to |
| | Computer | Status |
| | | The computer meets all requirem |
| 3 | < Back Next > | Cancel Help |

The **Computer Verification Results** dialog appears.



5 Click **Next** to continue the installation.

The **Support Services Settings - Last Logon Caching** dialog appears.

| Support Service Setting | s - Last Logon Caching | × |
|-------------------------|---|---|
| Support Service Secting | Last Logon Caching The BindView Support Service maintains a cache of user Last Logon information caching is recommended for sites with large user databases. The intervals below indicate periods of time in minutes between updates. Last Logon Cache Update Frequency Image: Enable Update Interval: 240 Image: minutes | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel Help |] |

Fig. 127 Support Services Settings - Last Logon Caching Dialog

You use this dialog to specify the last logon cache frequency. The Enable check box is selected by default. The update interval indicates periods of time in minutes between updates. The default is 240 minutes. If you do not want to collect last logon information, clear the check box.

Note: BindView recommends enabling user last logon information for sites with large user databases.

6 Make the last logon selections and click **Next**.

| Final Settings | | × |
|----------------|--|-----|
| | The final Settings for the BindView Support Service Installation are: Total Number of BindView Support Services being installed: 1 ************************************ | A P |
| | < Back Next > Cancel Help | |

The **Final Settings** dialog appears.

Fig. 128 Final Settings Dialog

7 Click **Next**. The **Installation Status** dialog displays the actions being taken to install the Support Service.

| Installation Status | | × |
|---------------------|--|--|
| Installation Status | Setup is installing the BindView installation are shown below. Cli Computers DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | Support Service. The results of the ck Cancel to abort installation. Results Starting the BindView Support S Ithe BindView Support Service |
| | < Back <u>N</u> ext > | Cancel Help |

Fig. 129 Installation Status Dialog

After the installation is complete, the **Setup Complete** dialog appears.

| Setup Complete | | × |
|----------------|---|---|
| Setup Complete | Setup has finished installing BindView Support Service. The results of the installation are shown below. Click Finish to complete Setup. | × |
| | K Back Finish Cancel Help | _ |

Fig. 130 Setup Complete Dialog

8 Click Finish. The Setup Complete dialog closes.

| Installing Using the Support Service Executable | Another method of installing the Support Service is to use the BindView Support Service executable program. You may wish to do this in cases where the Support Service has been removed. | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| ► | To install the service using the executable program | | |
| | 1 From any machine running an ECS, a Query Engine, or the bv-Config utility, access the directory where the BVQESUPPORTSVC.EXE program is located. The default location is C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE. | | |
| | 2 Double-click the BVQESUPPORTSVC.EXE program. An MS- DOS prompt window appears. | | |
| | C:\BVNTQE\BVQESupportSvc -install to install the service BUQESupportSvc -remove to remove the service BUQESupportSvc -debug <pre>/params</pre> to run as a console app Starting BUQESupportSvc as a service. This may take several seconds. | | |



The program installs and starts the BindView Support Service.

7 Configuring the Product

In This ChapterConfiguring bv-Control for Windows128Running the Configuration Wizard128Manually Changing the Configuration128Managing Connection Databases130Credential Database137Port Settings150

| Configuring bv- Control for Windows | When you wish to configure bv-Control for Windows, you can use the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard, or you can use tools to manually alter parts of the configuration. This chapter describes how to make changes to an existing Configuration. | | | |
|---|--|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| Running the Configuration Wizard | If you wish to change your configuration of bv-Control for Windows, the simplest way of doing so is to run the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard again. To Run the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard | | | |
| | 1 | Open the BindView | w RMS Console. | |
| | 2 | Open the bv-Cont Configuration fo | trol for Window Ider. | s container, then open the |
| | 3 | Double-Click the C of the window. | Control for Windows\Configurat Control for Windows\Configurat Configuration Name A Administrative Share Selections by-Config Configuration Wizard Configuration Wizard Connection Databases Disk Space Settings ECS Selection Configuration Status Check ELicense Options | Izard Item on the right side |

4 The bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard starts. Please turn to "Configuring the Console" on page 34 for information on using the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard.

Manually Changing the Configuration

If you choose, you can manually make changes to the ECS selection, to Connection Databases, or to the ECS Port Settings. This section describes how to make these changes manually.

• To select the ECS

If you wish, you can manually select the ECS that your copy of by-Control for Windows is using.

- 1 From the Console tree, expand the bv-Control for Windows container and select **Configuration**.
- 2 In the right details pane, double-click the Details Selection icon.

The Enterprise Configuration Service dialog appears.

| Er | Enterprise Configuration Service | | | |
|----|----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| | ECS in AD: | Find | | |
| | NetBIOS Name: | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | | |
| | TCP/IP Host Name: | adelossa-test2.qnt-canada.qnt-america.l | | |
| | TCP/IP Address: | 10 . 200 . 10 . 223 Resolve | | |
| | Port: | <default></default> | | |
| | ОК | Cancel Help | | |



The Enterprise Configuration Service dialog allows you to enter the required information for the machine where the ECS from which you want to select Query Engines is installed. To set the location of the ECS, the NetBIOS Name, TCP/IP Host Name, and the TCP/IP Address field must be completed. You can specify either the NetBIOS Name or the TCP/IP Host Name and click the Resolve button. The Resolve button automatically determines the IP address for the TCP/IP Host Name.

The **ECS in AD** field allows you to search the Active Directory for any ECS service that the BindView Information Server (BVIS) has privileges to see if the BVIS machine is located in an Active Directory environment.

- **3** Click the **Find** button and select an ECS from the drop-down list. This field only applies if you have an Active Directory setup with a Windows 2000 DNS.
- 4 In the **NetBIOS Name** box, type the name of the network computer where the ECS is installed.
- 5 Enter the TCP/IP Host Name and the TCP/IP Address in the TCP/IP Host Name and TCP/IP Address box, respectively. Or, click the Resolve button.

The **Resolve** button automatically detects the IP address for the Host Name.

Note: If name resolution is unavailable, you can enter the TCP/IP Address in the **TCP/IP Host Name** box.

6 In the **Port** box, enter the port number. This number configures bv-config and bv-Control for Windows to communicate with the ECS on a specific port that has been set

| | for the ECS. If the ECS is set to communicate on a specific port, the setting tells the local bv-config on what port to locate the ECS. If empty, the port number will be dynamically determined by the RPC subsystem. 7 Click OK to set the ECS. |
|---|--|
| Managing Connection Databases | To run a query, you must define a Connection Database. Connection Databases are useful to narrow the search area for a query. If you only want to collect data from one domain or a small collection of domains in your network, you can create a Connection Database that includes only Master Query Engines from a selected domain or domains. The bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard allows you to set up Connection Databases and assign them to users. This process allows you to set up and manage connection databases manually. |
| Using the Connection Database Dialog | The Connection Databases dialog has two fields: Current Connection Database and List of Available Connection Databases. |
| | You can use the List of Available Connection Databases field to perform several actions. You can use it to set the location of the ECS and to set the Current Connection Database. You can also use it to clone, modify, rename, and remove a database, as well as change the password for a database. |
| | The Current Connection Database box allows you to select a Connection Database from the List of Available Connection Databases box. If the Connection Database you select uses a password, you need to enter the password for it. |
| ► | To change the ECS location |
| | Perform the following steps if you want to change the ECS before you add or configure a Connection Database. If you do not want to modify the ECS settings, proceed to "To add a connection database" on page 132. |
| | 1 From the Console tree, expand the bv-Control for Windows |
| | container and select 🙀 Configuration. |
| | 2 From the right details pane, double-click the provide the 2 Connection Databases icon. |

| Connection Databases | | 2 |
|--|----------|---------|
| Current Connection Database 1969 | | |
| List of Available Connection Databases | | |
| 1969 | Set As | Current |
| | Set As | Default |
| | Add | Remove |
| | Modify | Clone |
| | Rename | ECS |
| | Change F | assword |
| OK Cancel | Help | |

The **Connection Databases** dialog appears.



From the Connection Databases dialog, click the ECS button.The Enterprise Configuration Service dialog appears.

| ECS in AD: | Find |
|-------------------|---|
| NetBIOS Name: | ADELOSSA-TEST2 |
| TCP/IP Host Name: | adelossa-test2.gnt-canada.gnt-america.l |
| TCP/IP Address: | 10 . 200 . 10 . 223 Resolve |
| Port | <default></default> |

Fig. 134 Enterprise Configuration Service Dialog

The **ECS in AD** field allows you to search the Active Directory for any ECS service that the BindView Information Server (BVIS) has privileges to see if the BVIS machine is located in an Active Directory environment.

- 4 Click the **Find** button and select an ECS from the dropdown list.
- **5** In the **NetBIOS Name** box, type the name of the network computer where the ECS is installed.
- 6 Enter the TCP/IP Host Name and the TCP/IP Address in the TCP/IP Host Name and TCP/IP Address box, respectively. Or, click the Resolve button.

The **Resolve** button automatically detects the IP address for the Host Name.

Note: If name resolution is unavailable, you can enter the TCP/IP Address in the **TCP/IP Host Name** box.

- 7 In the **Port** box, enter the port number. This number configures bv-config and bv-Control for Windows to communicate with the ECS on a specific port that has been set for the ECS. If the ECS is set to communicate on a specific port, the setting tells the local bv-config on what port to locate the ECS. If empty, the port number will be dynamically determined by the RPC subsystem.
- 8 Click OK. The Connection Databases dialog reappears.
- **9** Click OK to close the dialog.

To add a connection database

1 From the **Connection Databases** dialog, click the **Add** button.

The New Connection Database dialog appears.

| New Connection Database | < |
|-------------------------|---|
| Database Name | |
| Password | |
| Verify Password | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 135 New Connection Database Dialog

- **2** Type the new database name in the **Database Name** field. Enter a password for the database and repeat to verify.
- 3 Click OK.

| Modifying "Accounting Quer | y Engines" | | × |
|------------------------------|---------------|--------------|-----|
| Query Engines In Connection | Database | | ן ר |
| Domain/Workgroup | Query Engine | Status | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | 57-36- AB | |
| - Demove | <u>⊻</u> emy | A Bull Hu | |
| – Augilabla Quaru Engines —— | | | |
| | | | |
| GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| 1 | | | |
| | Add | | |
| | | | |
| OK | Cancel | <u>H</u> elp | |
| | | | |

The **Modifying** Connection Database dialog appears.



- **4** From the **Available Query Engines** list, select the Query Engine you want to add to the Connection Database.
- 5 Click Add.

The Connection Database manager attempts to verify a connection to the selected Query Engine. You may be asked to enter a password for the Query Engine. The selected Query Engine moves from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Query Engines In Connection Database** list.

6 After you have added all the Query Engines you want to use for this Connection Database, click OK. The Connection Databases dialog reappears, as shown in Fig. 133 on page 131.

▶ To set the current connection database

- 1 From the List of Available Connection Databases box, select the database you want to use. If the Connection Database requires a password, you will be prompted to enter it.
- 2 Click the Set as Current button.

If you are finished making changes to the connection Database, click **OK** to save the changes and close the dialog.

• To rename a connection database

1 From the **List of Available Connection Databases**, select the database you want to rename.

2 Click **Rename**. If the database you chose requires a password, the **Password** dialog appears.

| Accounting Query E | ngines | | × |
|--------------------|--------|------|---|
| Password | | | |
| ОК | Cancel | Help | |



3 Enter the password and click OK.

The **Renaming** dialog appears.

| Renaming "Accounting Query Engines" | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|--------------|--|
| New <u>N</u> ame | | | |
| OK | Cancel | <u>H</u> elp | |

Fig. 138 Renaming Dialog

- 4 Enter the new name for the database in the **New Name** box.
- 5 Click OK.

The **Connection Databases** dialog displays the new database name in the **List of Available Connection Databases** list.

To modify a connection database

- **1** From the **List of Available Connection Databases**, select the database you want to modify.
- 2 Click Modify.

If the database you chose requires a password, the **Password** dialog appears. Enter the password and click **OK**.

The **Modifying** dialog appears. See the section "Using the Modifying Dialog" on page 135 for information about the various operations you can perform using the **Connection Databases** dialog.

3 After you make all desired changes to the Query Engines in the **Modifying** dialog, click **OK**.

The **Connection Databases** dialog appears (Fig. 133 on page 131).

► To remove a connection database

- 1 From the **List of Available Connection Databases** list, select the database you want to remove.
- 2 Click **Remove**.

A dialog box appears asking if you are sure you want to remove the Connection Database.

3 Click Yes.

If the database you chose requires a password, the **Password** dialog appears. Enter the password and click **OK**.

• To clone a connection database

- 1 From the List of Available Connection Databases, select the database you want to clone.
- 2 Click Clone.

If the database you chose requires a password, the **Password** dialog appears. Enter the password and click **OK**.

The **Cloning** dialog appears.

| Cloning "Accounting Query Engines" | 1 |
|------------------------------------|---|
| New Name | |
| New Password | |
| <u>V</u> erify Password | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 139 Cloning Dialog

- **3** Enter the name of the new Connection Database in the **New Name** box. You should also enter a password for the new database and verify it.
- 4 Click OK.

The new Connection Database appears in the **List of Available Connection Databases** on the **Connection Databases** dialog.

Using the Modifying
DialogThe Modifying dialog contains two group boxes: Query Engines
In Connection Database and Available Query Engines. Using
this dialog, you can add and remove Query Engines from a
Connection Database and verify the connection to the Query

| Domain/Workgr | oup Query B | Engine | Status | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------|---------------------|---|---|
| | | | | | | |
| [| <u>R</u> emove | Verifi | | V <u>e</u> rify All |] | |
| vailable Query Er | naines | | | | | |
| | | | | | | _ |
| Domain/Workgr MAILADMIN NTDEV | roup Query I CMEAC DAISY | Engine DOR1 | | | | |

Engines the Connection Database uses. This dialog can be accessed by adding or modifying a Connection Database.

Fig. 140 Modifying Dialog

The **Query Engines In Connection Database** box displays those Query Engines already added to the Connection Database. It also includes three buttons: **Remove**, **Verify**, and **Verify All**. If there is a password is associated with the selected Query Engine, you must enter the correct password before access to remove or view the properties will be granted for the Query Engine service.

The **Remove** button enables you to delete the Query Engine selected in the **Query Engines In Connection Database** from the Connection Database.

• To remove a query engine

- 1 From the **Query Engines In Connection Database** list, select the Query Engine you want to remove.
- 2 Click **Remove**. The Query Engine is moved from the **Query Engines In Connection Database** list to the **Available Query Engines** list.
- 3 Click OK.
- > To verify the query engine connection

The **Verify** button checks the connection between the selected Query Engine and the database. If a Query Engine displays **NOT VERIFIED** or **NOT CONNECTED** in the **Status** column of the **Query Engines In Connection Database** dialog, you can use the **Verify** button to try to reestablish the connection to the Query Engine.

- **1** From the **Query Engine In Connection Database**, select the Query Engine you need to verify the connection for.
- 2 Click **Verify**. The Connection Database manager attempts to establish connection to the Query Engine.

If the connection is successfully made, the **Status** column displays **Connected**.

3 Click OK.

To verify the connection to all query engines in the connection database

The **Verify All** button checks the connections with all the Query Engines in the **Query Engines In Connection Database** list. You can use this to update the status of all the Query Engines at once if several of the Query Engines display **NOT VERIFIED** or **NOT CONNECTED**.

1 From the **Query Engine In Connection Database**, click the **Verify All** button.

For those Query Engines where a connection is successfully made, the **Status** column displays **Connected**.

2 Click OK.

The **Available Query Engines** list displays the Query Engines that are available to the Connection Database. Available Query Engines are dependent upon the domain(s) tracked by the ECS you entered in the **Enterprise Configuration Service** dialog.

The **Available Query Engines** list also contains an **Add** button which enables you to add a Query Engine from the list to the **Query Engines In Connection Database** list. For information on adding a Connection Database, see "To add a connection database" on page 132.

Credential Database

Credential Databases are sets of credentials—user name, domain, and password combinations—that allow access to passwordprotected Query Engines, and allow the Query Engine to perform actions as if they were a user. Credentials Databases are used to access password-protected Query Engines, and to perform ActiveAdmin tasks. A user can only perform tasks allowed by the set of credentials in the currently assigned Credentials Database.

If you select the **Enable password security** option for any Query Engine, a Console user must be supplied with the correct credentials for those Query Engines to use them.

You can use the bv-Control for Windows Configuration Wizard to create Credentials for users, or you can manage Credentials Databases manually.

• To create a credential database

1 In the BindView RMS Console, open the **BindView RMS Configuration** item. In the details pane, click the **Add Credentials** item. The **Add Credentials Wizard** appears.



Fig. 141 Add Credentials Wizard

2 Click **Next** to continue.

The Add Credential Databases panel appears.





3 To create a new Credentials Database, click in the **Database Name** field and type the new Database name. When you press **Enter** or click outside the field, the **Create New Database** dialog appears.

| Create New Data | base | × |
|------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| <u>D</u> atabase Name: | GRAIN Credential Database | <u>0</u> K |
| Password: | | <u>C</u> ancel |
| ⊻erify Password: | | |



4 Type a password for the database you are creating, then verify the password. Click **OK** to create the Credentials Database.

If needed, click and type another name to create another Credentials Database. You can have as many credentials databases as you need.

The Select Credentials panel appears.



Fig. 144 Select Credentials Panel

5 The pop-up list on the right-hand side lists the available Credentials Databases. Select a Credentials Database from the list, then use the browser on the left to add items to the credentials database. There are three types of items you can add to the credentials database.

Query Engine Credentials need to be added to the Credentials Database only if they are password protected. To add them, open the Query Engines item, select the Query Engine, and enter its password when prompted.

Query Credentials need to be added to allow users to perform ActiveAdmin tasks. When a user performs an ActiveAdmin task such as making a change to a user, file, share, or other object, the credentials you supply will be used to do so. To add Query Credentials to the Credentials Database, open the **Query Credentials** item and browse to the user account you wish to add as an ActiveAdmin Account. Select the user and click >> to add the user, then enter the password when prompted.

The **General Query Credentials** item allows you to specify a user from any domain on your network as an ActiveAdmin Account. To add any user, select **General Query Credentials** and click >> to add the account. Enter the Domain, Account Name, and Password to use, and click **OK** to continue.

6 When you have finished adding credentials to the credential databases click **Next** to continue.

The **Assign a Credential Database to Each User** panel appears.

| Add Credentials Wizard 🔀 🗶 | | | | |
|--|--|---|------|--|
| Assign a Credential Data Assign one database to e column to assign the sam | base to Each Use ach user. Select mull e database to multiple | er tiple rows in the credential database e users. | • | |
| User-Credential Database | ! | | | |
| User Name | | Credential Database | | |
| 👥 QNT-CANADA\Adi | ninistrator | lipstick | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | (Death | News Coursel | 1 | |
| | | | neip | |



- 7 For each user you have created, select a Credentials Database that should be assigned to the user from the pop-up list in the **Credential Database** column.
- 8 Click Next.

The **Credentials Summary** panel of the configuration wizard appears.

| Add Credentials Wizard | × |
|--|----------|
| Credentials Summary The following credential database information will be stored on the BindView Information Server. Click Next to continue. | U |
| The following users have a credential database assigned to them: QNT-CANADAVAdministrator lipstick | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 146 Credentials Summary Panel

9 Review the summary of the configuration settings you chose and click **Next** to complete the configuration.

The **Completing the Add Credentials Wizard** panel appears.

| Add Credentials Wizard | | | | | |
|------------------------|---|---|--|--|--|
| | Completing the Add Credentials Wizard. | | | | |
| | You have successfully completed the Add Credentials Wizard. | | | | |
| | To close this wizard, click Finish. | | | | |
| | | _ | | | |
| | Keinish Dancel Help | | | | |



10 Click **Finish** to close the wizard.

Managing Credentials Without Using the Wizard

You can also manage the Credentials Databases without using the Credentials Manager Wizard. Both the manual controls and the wizard provide full control over your Credentials Databases.

• To manage credentials databases manually

- **1** From the console tree, click the **BindView RMS Configuration** folder.
- 2 In the **Details** pane, ensure that the **Normal** tab is selected.
- 3 Double-click the Scredentials Manager icon in the details pane.

The Credentials Manager dialog appears.

| 🔍 Credentials Manager 📃 🔀 | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------|--|
| | <u>C</u> lose | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| Credential Operation | ons | Uatabase Uperat | ions | |
| Add | D <u>e</u> lete | Add | Delete | |
| Modify | <u>R</u> efresh | <u>Mo</u> dify | Refresh | |

Fig. 148 Credentials Manager Dialog

To add a database

4 From the **Database Operations** box, click **Add**.

The Create New Database dialog appears.

| Create New Database | × |
|---------------------|--------|
| Database Name: | OK |
| Password: | Cancel |
| Verify Password: | Help |
| | |

Fig. 149 Create New Database Dialog

- 5 Enter a **Database Name**.
- **6** Create a password and verify this password for this database.
- 7 Click OK.

The Credentials Manager dialog reappears (Fig. 148).

To add credentials

- 8 Select the database you want to add credentials to.
- **9** From the **Credential Operations** box, click **Add**.

If the database is password protected, you must enter the password.

| The Add Credentials dia | alog appears. |
|-------------------------|---------------|
|-------------------------|---------------|

| Add Credentials | × |
|---|---|
| by-Control for Windows | |
| Available Item(s) Para Query Engine Credentials Query Credentials | |
| Add Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Remove Modify Credentials. | |
| OK Cancel Apply Help | |



- **10** If you use Query Engines that are password-protected, expand the list of Query Engines by clicking the plus (+) sign to the left of the **Query Engine Credentials** item. In the list of available Query Engines, highlight the Query Engine you want to add to the database. Only password-protected Query Engines appear in this list.
- 11 Click Add.

The Credentials Manager dialog reappears.

12 Click **Close** to save the changes to the new database.

Database to a User

Assigning a Credential Once a credential database is created, an authorized user can create gueries that use the credential records in that credential database. Only an administrator can assign credentials to a user. To authorize a user to use the credential database, you must add the credential database to the user's account.

- To assign a user to use the credential database ►
 - Double-click the User Manager icon \mathbf{M} to bring up the **User** 1 Manager dialog.

| 2 | User Manager | X |
|---|-------------------|--------------|
| | User Name | Display Name |
| | E GRAIN SCHADER | GRAIN\Chaber |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | Add Modify Delete | e Help Close |

Fig. 151 User Manager Dialog

Highlight the desired user name and click **Modify**. 2

The User Manager **Properties** dialog appears.




3 Select the Credential Databases tab.

| QNT-CANADA\administrator Properties | × |
|---|---|
| Export Settings bv-Control for Windows User Options General Task List Query Info Credential Database | s |
| Credential Database: Creddb | |
| OK Cancel Help | |



- **4** Select the database name from the **Credential Database** drop-down list.
- **5** Enter the password that is assigned to the database.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the User Manager **Properties** dialog.
- 7 From the **User Manager** dialog, click **Close**.

• To add a new user to the credential database

You can add or modify users by selecting the appropriate buttons.

1 Double-click the User Manager icon 🔛 to bring up the User Manager dialog.

| 😨 User Manager | ł | | | × |
|--|--------|--------|--------------|---|
| User Name GRAINVebaber | | | Display Name | |
| | | | UTAIN CHADEI | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| , | (| D. (.) | 1 | |
| <u>A</u> dd | Modify | Delete | Help | |

Fig. 154 User Manager Dialog

2 Click Add.

The Select Users dialog appears.

| 💥 🛱 Select Users | | <u>?×</u> |
|---|-----------------|-----------|
| Look in: 🗊 grain.doc | | • |
| Name | In Folder | |
| 😰 Administrator | grain.doc/Users | |
| 🥵 Guest | grain.doc/Users | |
| 🕵 TsinternetUser | grain.doc/Users | |
| IUSR_DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | grain.doc/Users | |
| VIEW IWAM_DOC-WHEAT-W2KS | grain.doc/Users | |
| krbtgt | grain.doc/Users | |
| 🕵 Cecil A. Habermacher (chaber@grain.doc) | grain.doc/Users | <u> </u> |
| Add Check Names | | |
| << Type names separated by semicolons or choose I | from list >> | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | OK | Cancel |
| | | / |

Fig. 155 Select Users Dialog

- **3** From the **Look in** drop-down list, select the domain the user is a member of.
- 4 From the **Name** box, select the user you want to add.
- 5 Click OK.



General tab

The User Administrator **Properties** dialog appears.

Fig. 156 User Manager Properties Dialog – General Tab

The **General** tab allows you to define the Display Name and the admin equivalency of the user.

- 6 Enter the Display Name for the user in the **Display Name** box.
- 7 Select the **Is BindView Administrator** option if you want the user to have full admin equivalency within the BindView RMS Console. If this option is not selected, the user may be restricted from running some gueries.

8

| Exc | oort Settings 🗍 by-Control for Windows Us | er Optior |
|------------|--|-----------|
| Gene | al Task List Query Info Credentia | al Databa |
| ल | | |
| <u>×</u> | | |
| Righ | 15 | |
| <u>ا</u> ا | Jser can create a task list | |
| | Jser can modify an existing task list | |
| Π | Jser can run programs on server as post process c | ommand |
| | Select folder where user can run programs: | |
| | C:\Program Files\BindView\RMS\bin | |
| | Use credentials from export settings to allow p to access network resources | rograms |
| Defa | ult Options | |
| آ د | aunch Task Status on New Task List Job | |
| Defa | ult Settings For Task Summary File: | E dit. |
| Defa | ult Action when Double-clicking on a Task List: | Edit. |
| Defa | ult Sattings for Post Process Commands: | |
| Dela | die Geeenigs for Fost Frocess Commands. | |
| | | |

Fig. 157 User Manager Properties Dialog – Task List Tab

Task List tab

The **Task List** tab allows you to define a user's rights to create and modify task lists, and to define the summary options that determine how the files produced by a task list are saved or distributed.

Note: The default controls defined in the **Task List** tab will be used for every task list you execute. Only an administrator can modify the controls.

9 Select the **Query Info** tab.

| IT-CANADA\administrator Properties | ľ |
|--|---|
| Export Settings by-Control for Windows User Options General Task List Query Info Credential Databases | |
| | |
| Rights | |
| 🔽 User Can Create Queries | |
| 🔽 User Can Modify Queries | |
| 🔽 User Can Use ActiveAdmin | |
| Options | |
| Display Session Log After Using ActiveAdmin | |
| Display Advisories When Browsing | |
| Launch Task Status On New Query Job | |
| User Data | |
| Directory Properties Edit | |
| Default Action Settings | |
| Defaults | |
| Default Baseline Settings Edit | |
| Default Grid Settings Edit | |
| Default Report Style Settings Edit | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 158 User Manager Properties Dialog – Query Info Tab

Query Info tabThe Query Info tab allows you to define the query-related
properties of the user, including the user's right to perform
ActiveAdmin changes to the network. You can assign rights to
create or modify a query, or select an option to Display Advisories
When Browsing. If the user should be allowed to use
ActiveAdmin, make sure that User Can Use ActiveAdmin is
selected.

For more information on query-related settings, refer to the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

| QNT-CANADA\a | dministrato | or Properties | | | × |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|---|
| Export Setti | ngs | by-Control for | Windows Use | er Options | ļ |
| ieneral | Task List | Query Info | Credentia | I Databases | |
| Credential Dat | abase: 🔽 | eddb | ľ | - | |
| | 13399010. | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | OK | Cancel | Help | |

10 Select the **Credential Databases** tab.

| Fig. 159 | User Manager Properties Dialog - Credential |
|----------|---|
| | Databases Tab |

| Credential Databases tab | | The Credential Databases tab allows you to assign a credential database to a user. |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| | 11 | Select the database name from the Credential Database drop-down list. |
| | 12 | Enter the password that is assigned to the database. |
| | 13 | Click OK . |
| | | The User Manager dialog reappears (Fig. 151). |
| | 14 | Click Close . |
| | No at the dat | te: Changing the credentials in a database requires restarting BindView RMS Console. For more information on credential abases, refer to "Credential Database" on page 137. |
| | | |
| Port Settings | The nur ECS thro be the | e port settings allow you to set the port number. The port nber is used by the Query Engine when communicating with the 5. This is useful when communication must be performed ough a firewall. If the port is not specified, the port number will dynamically determined by the RPC subsystem. You can specify port number during or after the Query Engine installation |

150 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

process. This section will discuss how to modify port settings for both the ECS and the Query Engines post-install.

To set the port number during the installation process, refer to "Selecting a Machine Port" on page 87.

Modifying the ECS Communication Port Settings

To set the ECS communication port after install

1 On the ECS host, enter the port number in the following registry value:

HKLM\Software\Bindview\Enterprise Configuration Service\ProtocolSequences\ncacn_ip_tcp\Endpoint

- 2 Restart the **ECS**.
- **3** Open the **bv-Config** utility.

Note: An error message will appear indicating that bv-Config could not find the ECS.

4 From the **Object** menu, select the **Options** command.

The **Options** dialog appears.

| Options | | × |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| ECS Settings Domain S | ettings | |
| ECS Computers: | | |
| ECS Current Settings | | |
| NetBIOS Name: | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| TCP/IP Hostname: | adelossa-test2.gnt-canada.gnt-ar | |
| TCP/IP Address: | 10 . 200 . 10 . 223 | |
| Port: | | |
| ECS Saved Settings- | | |
| NetBIOS Name: | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| TCP/IP Hostname: | adelossa-test2.gnt-canada.gnt-ar | |
| TCP/IP Address: | 10.200.10.223 | |
| Port: | | |
| | K Cancel Help | |

Fig. 160 Options Dialog – ECS Settings

- 5 On the ECS Settings tab, enter the port settings for both the ECS Current Settings and the ECS Saved Settings box.
- **6** Repeat the steps mentioned above until all Query Engines have been modified.
- **7** Open the BindView RMS Console and browse to the bv-Control for Windows Configuration folder.
- 8 Open the **Connection Databases** item.

- 9 In the **Connection Databases** dialog, click **ECS**.
- **10** From the **Enterprise Configuration Service** dialog, enter the port number in the **Port** field.
- **11** Click **OK**.
- **12** In the **Connection Databases** dialog, click **OK**.

Modifying the Query Engine Communication Port Settings

- To set the Query Engine communication port after install
 - **1** Open the bv-Config utility.
 - 2 From the Action menu, select the **Edit ECS Database** command.
 - **3** A warning message appears. "Modifying the Enterprise Configuration Service Database is a powerful feature and should only be done by advanced users."
 - 4 Click **Yes** to modify the database.
 - **5** In the **ECS Database Viewer** dialog, select the host machine name.

| 1 11 | ECS Database Viewer | X |
|-------------|---|---|
| | Database: Query Engines | |
| | Machine Domain Status Type Flags Security OS Version QE Version Last Succ | |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP GRAIN Active Master & Slave None 5.0 Service Pack 2 7.20 7/8/2002 | |
| | Edit | |
| | Delete | |
| | <u>Save</u> | |
| | <u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>Clipboard</u> <u>Help</u> | , |

Fig. 161 ECS Database Viewer Dialog

6 Click Edit.

| dit Query Engine Entry | / | | | × |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| D <u>o</u> main: GRAIN | | | | <u>0</u> K |
| Machine: | OBN-W2KP | | | <u>C</u> ancel |
| | orme ment | | | <u>H</u> elp |
| Status | Inactive | Query | Engine Maste <u>r</u> | 🔽 Sjave |
| Protocol Sequences | | | | |
| Protocol Sequence | Host Name | ם אכי ער | Physical A | Add |
| Novell SPX TCP/IP Datagram | DOC-CORN DOC-CORN DOC-CORN | -W2KP -W2KP -W2KP | DOC-COR 10.23.4.35 | Edit |
| |) DUC-CURN | -W2KP | | <u>D</u> elete |
| Slave Query Engines to | Use | | | |
| Available Query Engir | ies | <u>S</u> el | ected Query B | Engines |
| | | | IC-CORN-W2 | KP |
| | - | 2 | | |
| | | | | |
| | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | | |
| I | | | | |

The **Edit Query Engine Entry** dialog appears.

Fig. 162 Edit Query Engine Entry Dialog

- 7 In the **Protocol Sequences** box, select **TCP/IP**. All other protocol sequences ignore the port setting.
- 8 Click Edit.

The Edit Protocol Sequence dialog appears.

| Edit Protocol Sequenc | e X |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Protocol Sequence: | ТСРЛР |
| <u>H</u> ost Name: | DOC-CORN-W2KP |
| Physical <u>A</u> ddress: | 10.23.4.39 |
| Po <u>r</u> t: | |
| <u>0</u> K | <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp |

Fig. 163 Edit Protocol Sequence Dialog

- **9** Enter the port number in the **Port** field.
- **10** Click **OK**.

Note: A warning message appears indicating that the Query Engine will have to be restarted for the change to take effect.

The Edit Query Engine Entry dialog reappears.

11 Click OK in the **Edit Query Engine Entry** dialog.

- **12** Repeat Step 2 through Step 11 until all Query Engines have been modified.
- **13** In the bv-Config utility, select the Query Engine host machine for the Query Engine that was modified in the steps indicated above.
- **14** From the right-hand component, select **Query Engine Settings**.
- **15** Select the **Options** tab.

| 😨 Query Engine Setti | ngs | | | × |
|--|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Security Cache Options Password | ECS Agent Analysis Analysis | Sessio s Error Loggin; DA | ns Event g Jobs | IP Cache Logging Advanced |
| Cache Directory: File Name: Share Name: | C:\Program ntcache.ch BVQECDS: | n Files∖Bind√ Ic \$ | ïew\BVNTQ | E\C |
| - TCP/IP settings Port | 0 |] к | Cancel | Help |



- **16** Enter the communications port number in the **Port** field.
- **17** Click **OK** and choose to restart the Query Engine.
- **18** Repeat Step 13 through Step 17 until all Query Engine settings have been modified.

Modifying both the ECS and Query Engine Communication Ports

- To modify the ECS and Query Engine communication ports after install
 - **1** On the ECS host, enter the port number in the following registry value:

HKLM\Software\Bindview\Enterprise Configuration Service\ECSRPCServer\ProtocolSequences\ ncacn_ip_tcp\Endpoint

- 2 Restart the **ECS**.
- **3** Open the **bv-Config** utility.

Note: An advisory message is displayed indicating that bv-Config could not find the ECS.

4 From the **Object** menu, select the **Options** command.

The **Options** dialog appears.

| C | ptions | × |
|---|---|---|
| | ECS Settings Domain Settings | |
| | , | |
| | ECS Computers: | |
| | ECS Current Settings | |
| | NetBIOS Name: ADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| | TCP/IP Hostname: adelossa-test2.gnt-canada.gnt-ar | |
| | TCP/IP Address: 10 . 200 . 10 . 223 | |
| | Port | |
| | ECS Saved Settings | |
| | NetBIOS Name: ADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| | TCP/IP Hostname: adelossa-test2.qnt-canada.qnt-ar | |
| | TCP/IP Address: 10 . 200 . 10 . 223 | |
| | Port: | |
| | <u></u> | |
| | OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 165 Options Dialog – ECS Settings

- 5 On the ECS Settings tab, enter the port settings for both the ECS Current Settings and the ECS Saved Settings box.
- 6 Click OK.
- 7 On the bv-Config **Action** menu select the **Edit ECS Database** command.

- 8 A warning message appears. Click **Yes**.
- **9** From the **ECS Database Viewer** dialog, select the host machine name.

| 201 | ECS Database View | er | | | | | | | × | ٢ |
|------------|-------------------|--------|--------|--------------------|------------|--------------------|------------|-----------|--------------|---|
| | | | | Da <u>t</u> abase: | Query Engi | nes | - | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Machine | Domain | Status | Type Flags | Security | OS Version | QE Version | Last Succ | | |
| | DOC-CORN-W2KP | GRAIN | Active | Master & Slave | None | 5.0 Service Pack 2 | 7.20 | 7/8/2002 | Add | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | <u>E</u> dit | |
| | | | | | | | | | Delate | |
| | | | | | | | | | Delete | |
| | | | | | | | | | Save | |
| | • | | | | | | | F | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | 01 | Course 1 | Clabord | | |
| | | | | | | | Lancel | | | |

- Fig. 166 ECS Database Viewer Dialog
- 10 Click Edit.

The Edit Query Engine Entry dialog appears.

| Edit Query Engine Entry Domain: GRAIN | | | | ОК |
|--|-----------------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| Machine: DOC-CO |)RN-W2KP | | | Cancel Help |
| C Active C | Inactive | | y Engine Master | 🔽 Slave |
| Protocol Sequences | | | | |
| Protocol Sequence TCP/IP | Host Name DOC-CORN | -w2KP | Physical A 10.23.4.35 | Add |
| Novell SPX TCP/IP Datagram | DOC-CORN DOC-CORN | -W2KP -W2KP | DOC-COR 10.23.4.39 | Edit |
| | DOC-CONN | -w2KF |) DOC-CON | Delete |
| Slave Query Engines to Available Query Engine | Use | Sel | lected Query | Engines |
| | | > DC |)C·CORN-W2 | 2KP |
| | < | | | |
| | | | | |



- **11** From the **Protocol Sequences** box, select **TCP/IP**. All other protocol sequences ignore the port setting.
- 12 Click Edit.

The Edit Protocol Sequence dialog appears.

| Edit Protocol Sequence | e X |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Protocol Sequence: | TCP/IP |
| <u>H</u> ost Name: | DOC-CORN-W2KP |
| Physical <u>A</u> ddress: | 10.23.4.39 |
| Po <u>r</u> t: | |
| <u>0</u> K | <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp |



- **13** Enter the port number in the **Port** field.
- 14 Click OK.

Note: A warning message appears indicating that the Query Engine will have to be restarted for the change to take effect.

- 15 From the Edit Query Engine Entry dialog, click OK.
- **16** Repeat Step 5 through Step 15 until all Query Engines have been modified.
- **17** From the bv-Config utility, select the Query Engine host machine for the Query Engine that was modified in the steps mentioned above.
- **18** From the right-hand component, select **Query Engine Settings**.
- **19** Select the **Options** tab.

| 其 Query Engine Setti | ngs | × |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Security Cache Cache Options Password | ECS Session Agents Agents Agents Agents Agents | ns IP Cache Event Logging g Jobs Advanced |
| Domain Cache Directory: | QNT-CANADA | ew\BVNTQE\C |
| File Name: Share Name: | ntcache.chc BVQECDS\$ | |
| CCP/IP settings Port | | |
| | ОК | Cancel Help |

| Fig. 16 | Query | Engine | Settings-Op | tions Tab |
|---------|-------|--------|-------------|-----------|
|---------|-------|--------|-------------|-----------|

- 20 Enter the communications port number in the Port field.
- **21** Select the **ECS** tab.

| Query Engine Settings | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Cache Agents Event Logging Options Password Analysis Error Logging Jobs Advanced Security ECS Sessions | | | | |
| Network Information Enter the Enterprise Configuration Service network settings and location information. | | | | |
| NetBIOS Name: DOC-CORN-W2KP | | | | |
| TCP/IP Hostname: DOC-CORN-W2KP | | | | |
| TCP/IP <u>A</u> ddress: 10 . 23 . 4 . 39 | | | | |
| Port | | | | |
| Database | | | | |
| C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\Cache\SQE.edb | | | | |
| Sync Master Now! | | | | |
| OK Cancel Help | | | | |

Fig. 170 Query Engine Settings-ECS Tab

- 22 Enter the communication port number in the Port field.
- 23 Click OK and choose to restart the Query Engine.
- **24** Repeat Step 17 through Step 23 until all Query Engine settings have been modified.
- **25** Open the BindView RMS Console and browse to the bv-Control for Windows Configuration container.
- 26 Select the Connection Databases item.
- 27 From the Connection Databases dialog, click ECS.
- **28** From the **Enterprise Configuration Service** dialog, enter the port number in the **Port** field.
- 29 Click OK.
- 30 From the Connection Databases dialog, click OK.

Configuring Query Engine Settings

| In This Chapter | Configuring the Query Engine | 160 |
|-----------------|--|-----|
| | Accessing the Query Engine Settings Dialog | 160 |
| | Query Engine Settings Tabs | 162 |
| | Distribution Rules | 201 |
| | Promoting and Demoting Query Engines | 219 |
| | | |

8

8: Configuring Query Engine Settings 159

| Configuring the Query Engine | After installing bv-Control for Windows, the ECS, and the Query Engine service(s), you may need to adjust certain Query Engine settings to enable the snap-in module to collect network data more efficiently. |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | The Query Engine Settings dialog allows you to set the following Query Engine service options: |
| | Computer, User, and Last Logon Cache Number of Data Collection Agents per Query Engine Disk Space Storage Limitations Maximum Number of Sessions and Processes |
| | It also allows you to set error and event log files, password analysis test files, and Query Engine security features. The Query Engine Settings dialog is accessed through the bv-Config utility. |
| | The bv-Config utility provides another type of Query Engine setting: <i>distribution rules</i> . Distribution rules enable you to assign specific Slave Query Engines to process parts of queries (jobs) for a Master Query Engine. This can increase the speed at which a query is processed by creating logical machine groupings. |
| | Using the bv-Config utility, you can also alter a Query Engine's type. The Promote to a Master Query Engine and Demote to a Slave Query Engine options allow you to change a Master to a Slave or a Slave to a Master. |

Accessing the Query Engine Settings Dialog

Run the bv-Config utility by clicking on the bv-Config item in the details pane of the BindView RMS Console. The domain/machine view of the bv-Config utility window opens.

| by-Config - SOUTHWESTERN | COL - \\ANTONITO | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Object Action View Help | | |
| 🔍 🛼 📾 📾 🖓 | F | |
| | | |
| A.B.C.D.E.F.G | Item Name | Comment |
| ENT-BOLZANO-ZKA | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy |
| | AT Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs |
| ASTERNCOLORADO | Audit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information |
| | Demote to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine |
| | Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules |
| | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log |
| | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log |
| | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log |
| | Event Log - Security | Security Event Log |
| | Event Log - System | System Event Log |
| | 💯 Groups | View/Edit Groups |
| | 🚚 Install Query Engine | Install a New Query Engine |
| | Processes | View Running Processes |
| | k Product File Versions | Displays the versions of all the bv-Control for Windows component f |
| | Query Engine Diagnostics - Master | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | 🖧 Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Information |
| | Query Engine Settings | View/Edit the Query Engine Settings |
| | Services | View/Edit Services |
| | 💫 Shares | View/Edit Shares |
| | Support Service Settings | Change BindView Support Service Settings for Last Logon caching. |
| | 🔞 Uninstall BindView Support Service | Uninstalls the BindView Support Service from this machine |
| | 🔞 Uninstall Query Engine | Uninstall an existing Query Engine |
| | 🙀 Upgrade BindView Query Engine | Upgrade the currently installed BindView Query Engine with a newer |
| | 🛃 User Rights | View/Edit User Rights |
| | 🕵 Users | View/Edit Users |
| , Ready | | NUM Thursday, March 18, 2004 10:34 AM 26 object(s) // |

Fig. 171 bv-Config Utility Window - Domain View

▶ To access the query engine settings dialog

1 Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the domain name icon, or double-click the domain name to view the machines that are members of the selected domain.

Those machines appear in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window, as well as indented beneath the domain in the left-hand component of the window.

▶ To select the query engine machine

2 Select the machine where the Query Engine is installed to alter its settings. You may either single-click the machine displayed in the left component, or double-click the machine in the righthand component.

The right-hand component of the bv-Config utility displays various icons. These icons indicate the actions you can perform or the information you can view for the chosen machine. One of the options for all machines with a Query Engine installed is **Query Engine Settings**.

| 🙀 by-Config - SOUTHWESTERNCOL - \\ANTONITO | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|--|
| Object Action View Help | | | | |
| ≞ <u>a</u> 13: 133 ∰ ⊉ | 8 E | | | |
| 📮 🗊 A.B.C.D.E.F.G | Item Name | Comment | | |
| LNT-BOLZANO-2KA | Account Policy | View/Edit the Account Policy | | |
| 🗄 🕎 A.B.C.D.NET | 🔀 AT Scheduler | View/Edit AT Scheduled Jobs | | |
| | Audit Policy | View/Edit Account Policy Information | | |
| | Demote to a Slave Query Engine | Demotes the Master Query Engine to a Slave Q | | |
| | Distribution Rules | Change Query Distribution Rules | | |
| | Event Log - Application | Application Event Log | | |
| | Event Log - Directory Service | Directory Service Event Log | | |
| | Event Log - DNS Server | DNS Server Event Log | | |
| | Event Log - File Replication Service | File Replication Service Event Log | | |
| | Event Log - Security | Security Event Log | | |
| | Event Log - System | System Event Log | | |
| | 🕂 Groups | View/Edit Groups | | |
| | 🛃 Install Query Engine | Install a New Query Engine | | |
| | Processes | View Running Processes | | |
| | Product File Versions | Displays the versions of all the bv-Control for W | | |
| | Real Action of the American Action of the Ame | View Master Query Engine Diagnostic Informatic | | |
| | Query Engine Diagnostics - Slave | View Slave Query Engine Diagnostic Information | | |
| | Query Engine Settings | View/Edit the Query Engine Settings | | |
| | Services | View/Edit Services | | |
| i | | | | |
| Ready | NUM | Thursday, March 18, 2004 10:39 AM 26 object(s) 🖉 | | |

3 Double-click the **Query Engine Settings** option.

Fig. 172 bv-Config Window - Query Engine Settings Option

| 🚺 Query Engine Settings 🛛 🔀 |
|--|
| Error Logging Jobs Advanced Security Advanced Security ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Cache Agents Event Logging Options Password Analysis Computer Cache |
| User Cache |
| OK Cancel Help |

The Query Engine Settings dialog appears.

Fig. 173 Query Engine Settings Dialog

Query EngineThe Query Engine Settings dialog for Master Query EnginesSettings TabsContains the following tabs:

- Cache
- Agents
- Event Logging
- Options
- Password Analysis
- Error Logging
- Jobs
- Advanced
- Security
- Advanced Security
- ECS
- Sessions
- IP Cache
- SQE Usage
- Bandwidth Schedule

The **Query Engine Settings** dialog for Slave Query Engines contains some but not all of the same tabs as the dialog for Masters. The **Query Engine Settings** dialog for Slave Query Engines contains the following tabs:

- DCA
- Event Logging
- Options
- 162 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

- Password Analysis
- Error Logging
- Jobs
- ECS

Cache Tab

The **Cache** tab is available only on machines where a Master Query Engine is installed. When you select a Master from the bv-Config utility window and click the **Query Engine Settings** option, the **Cache** tab of the **Query Engine Settings** dialog appears.

| Uuery Engine Settings |
|--|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Error Logging Jobs Advanced Security Advanced Security Cache Agents Event Logging Options Password Analysis Computer Cache Image: Tenabled Image: Tenabled Image: Tenabled Target Computer: Image: Tenabled Image: Tenabled |
| |
| User Cache |
| *Enabled Refresh on Startup *Schedule |
| Target Computer: WANTONITO |
| "Advanced |
| * Indicates dynamic field. |
| OK Cancel Help |

Fig. 174 Query Engine Settings - Cache Tab

The BindView Query Engine can optionally maintain a cache of machine and user information that is periodically updated from the network. This user cache information includes basic user properties, except for user passwords stored in the NT Security Account Manager (SAM) database. The machine cache information includes basic machine information necessary to efficiently process a report, such as each machine's type (workstation, server, or domain controller) and status (up or down). The cache update uses free CPU time to collect its data and will yield resources to other processes as needed.

To set the computer cache

1 Click the **Enabled** option in the **Computer Cache** box.

The **Refresh on Startup** option, **Schedule** button, **Target Computer** field, and the **Browse** button become enabled.

Optional: Click the **Refresh on Startup** option to set the computer cache to update when the Query Engine service starts.

Scheduling the

You can set the computer cache to update at fixed intervals or at **Computer Cache Update** specified times throughout the day. To do this, you must use the Schedule dialog, accessed by clicking the Schedule button. The default update interval is 30 minutes.

> If you do not want to alter the computer cache update schedule, proceed to "To set the target computer" on page 165.

To set the cache update schedule ►

1 Click the **Schedule** button to set cache update times.

| 👯 Schedule | × |
|---|----------------------|
| Schedule Fixed Interval Specified Times Time : 24hr clock Add | OK Cancel Help |
| Remove Change | |

Fig. 175 Schedule Dialog - Computer Cache

- 2 Leave the **Fixed Interval** option checked, or click the Specified Times option. If you selected the Specified Times option, proceed to Step 4.
- If you chose the **Fixed Interval** update option, but you want to 3 change the number of hours and/or minutes between the beginning of each cache update, you can change the number of hours in the **hrs** field and/or change the number of minutes in the **mins** field.

The **hrs** field accepts the number of hours from 0 to 168. The mins field accepts numbers between 00 and 59. Proceed to Step 7.

4 If you chose the **Specified Times** interval update option, use the fields to the right of the option to enter the clock time in hours (01 to 12) and minutes (00 to 59) when you want the update to occur.

The hour field accepts numbers from 01 to 12, and the minutes field accepts numbers between 00 and 59.

- 5 Select the **PM** option to indicate that the time entered in Step 4 represents a time from noon until 11:59 p.m.
- 6 Click **Add** to add the time entered in the fields to the right of the Specified Time option to the Time list on the Schedule dialog. You can add multiple times to begin the cache update.

Repeat Step 4 through Step 6 until you have selected all the desired update times.

7 Click **OK** to set the computer cache update schedule and close the **Schedule** dialog. This will return you to the **Cache** tab.

The **Target Computer** field displays the name of the computer to use to update the cache. By default, this field displays the name of the domain's PDC, unless a Query Engine installed on the BDC. If you want to use the default computer to update the cache, proceed to "To set the user cache" on page 165.

To set the target computer

1 Click the **browse...** button.

The **Select Computer** dialog appears.

| Select Computer | × |
|------------------|--------------|
| Computer: | OK Cancel |
| Select Computer: | |
| R QNT-CANADA | |
| PADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| | |
| | |
| A QNT-ENGLAND | |
| 🐌 QNT-FIJI | |
| ONT-FRANCE | - |
| | |



- **2** Use the **Select Computer** list to search for and select the domain controller to use to update the cache.
- 3 Click OK.

The **Cache** tab displays the computer you selected in the **Target Computer** field.

To set the user cache

The Master Query Engine can also optionally maintain a cache of user information that is periodically updated from the network. This user cache information includes basic user properties stored in the Windows NT SAM database, except for user passwords.

1 Click the **Enabled** option in the **User Cache** box.

The **Refresh on Startup** option, **Schedule** button, **Target Computer** field, **browse...** button, and **Advanced** button become available.

Optional: Click the **Refresh on Startup** option to set the user cache to update when the Query Engine service is started.

Scheduling the UserYou can set the user cache to update at fixed intervals or at specificCache UpdateYou can set the user cache to update at fixed intervals or at specificCache UpdateScheduledialog, accessed by clicking the ScheduleScheduleupdate interval is 45 minutes.

If you do not want to alter the user cache update schedule, proceed to "To set the target computer" on page 167.

- To set the user cache update schedule
 - 1 Click the **Schedule** button to set cache update times. The **Schedule** dialog appears.

| | les. |
|---|--------|
| Schedule | × |
| Schedule © Fixed Interval 4 hrs 0 mins | ОК |
| | Cancel |
| | Help |
| Time : 24hr clock Add | |
| Remove | |
| Change | |
| | |

Fig. 177 Schedule Dialog – User Cache

- 2 Leave the **Fixed Interval** option checked, or click the **Specified Times** option. If you selected the **Specified Times** option, proceed to Step 4.
- **3** If you chose the **Fixed Interval** update option, but you want to change the number of hours and/or minutes between the beginning of each cache update, you can change the number of hours in the **hrs** field and/or change the number of minutes in the **mins** field.

The **hrs** field accepts numbers between 0 and 168. The **mins** field accepts numbers between 00 and 59. Proceed to Step 7.

- **4** If you chose the **Specified Times** interval update option, use the fields to the right of the option to enter the clock time in hours (01 to 12) and minutes (00 to 59) when you want the update to occur.
- **5** Select the **PM** option to indicate that the time entered in Step 4 represents a time from noon until 11:59 p.m.
- 6 Click **Add** to add the time entered in the fields to the right of the **Specified Times** option to the **Time** list on the **Schedule** dialog. You can add multiple times to begin the cache update.

Repeat Step 4 through Step 6 until you have selected all the desired update times.

7 Click **OK** to set the user cache update schedule and close the **Schedule** dialog. This will return you to the **Cache** tab.

The **Target Computer** field displays the name of the computer to use to update the cache. By default, this field displays the name of the domain's PDC, unless a Query Engine is installed on the BDC. If you want to use the default computer to update the cache, proceed to "To set advanced user cache options" on page 167.

- **•** To set the target computer
 - **1** Click the **browse...** button.

The **Select Computer** dialog appears.

| Select Computer | × |
|---|--------------|
| Computer: | OK Cancel |
| Select Computer: | Help |
| ONT-CANADA ADELOSSA-TEST2 LNT-ACTON-STD ONT-AJAX-STD ONT-CYPRUS ONT-ENGLAND ONT-ENGLAND ONT-FUI ONT-FUI CONT-FUI CO | |



- **2** Use the **Select Computer** list to search for and select the domain controller to use to update the cache.
- 3 Click OK.

The **Cache** tab displays the computer you selected in the **Target Computer** field.

Advanced User CacheUsing the Cache tab, you can also set the last logon cacheOptionsUsing the Cache tab, you can also set the last logon cacheOury Engine will collect last logon data. To set these options, use
the following steps:

To set advanced user cache options

1 Click the **Advanced** button in the **User Cache** box of the **Cache** tab.

The Advanced User Cache Options dialog appears.

| Advanced User Cache Options | |
|--|----------------------|
| Last Logon Caching Enabled "Schedule" Search All Domain Controllers C "Search Selected Domain Controllers Domain Controllers | OK Cancel Help |
| | Add Remove |
| "Support Services collect Last Logon data "MQE collects Last Logon data | |

Fig. 179 Advanced User Cache Options Dialog

The **Advanced User Cache Options** dialog allows you to decrease the number of controllers queried when collecting last logon information. You can configure the Query Engine to gather last logon information from only those domain controllers likely to be responsible for logon authentication for the domain you want to query. This can significantly increase the speed at which you obtain last logon data.

2 Enable the cache options by checking the **Enabled** box.

The **Schedule** dialog appears.

| 💥 🛿 Schedule | × |
|--|----------------------|
| Schedule Fixed Interval Specified Times Specified Times Specified Times Specified Times Change Change | OK Cancel Help |
| | |

Fig. 180 Schedule dialog

- **3** Leave the **Fixed Interval** option checked, or click the **Specified Times** option. If you selected the **Specified Time** option, proceed to Step 5.
- 4 If you chose the **Fixed Interval** update option, but you want to change the number of hours and/or minutes between the beginning of each cache update, change the number of hours in the **hrs** field and/or change the number of minutes in the **mins** field.

The **hrs** field accepts numbers from 0 to 168. The **mins** field accepts numbers between 00 and 59. Proceed to Step 7.

5 If you chose the **Specified Times** interval update option, use the fields to the right of the option to enter the time in hours and minutes when you want the update to occur.

The first field (hours) accepts numbers from 01 to 12, and the second field (minutes) accepts numbers between 00 and 59.

- **6** Select the **PM** option to indicate that the time entered in Step 4 represents a time from noon until 11:59 p.m.
- 7 Click Add to add the time entered in the fields to the right of the Specified Times option to the Time list on the Schedule dialog. You can add multiple times to begin the cache update.

Repeat Step 5 through Step 7 until you have selected all the desired update times.

8 Click **OK** to set the user cache update schedule and close the **Schedule** dialog. This will return you to the **Cache** tab.

The Search All Domain Controllers and Search Selected Domain Controllers options, the Domain Controllers list, and the Add and Remove buttons become available.

9 By default, the **Search All Domain Controllers** option is selected. Accept this option, or click the **Search Selected Domain Controllers** option.

The **Search All Domain Controllers** option tells the Master Query Engine to search all controllers within the domain on which it reports for last logon information. The **Search Selected Domain Controllers** option allows you to select which controllers the Master Query Engine uses to collect last logon data. When selected, you can add or remove machines for the Master to use for collecting last logon data. Machines you select appear in the Domain Controllers list.

The **Support Services collect Last Logon data** option allows you to collect Last Logon data for the Support Services. The **MQE collects Last Logon data** option allows for the collection of last logon caching on the MQE.

10 Click **OK** to close the dialog and return to the **Cache** tab.

Note: For optimum performance, you should turn off caching at the support services. You can do this by disabling the BindView Support Service on each DC you have it running on. This is for performance purposes only. If you choose not to turn off caching at your support services, everything will still function correctly.

Agents Tab

The **Agents** tab is available for both Slave and Master Query Engines, and the options available are the same. It controls the number of Data Collection Agents (DCAs) used by the selected Query Engine (Master or Slave) to collect network data. A DCA is a program used by a Query Engine to collect network data. When a Query Engine receives a data request, the Query Engine divides the request into smaller units called atomic jobs. Each job is given to a DCA. Depending on the machine, the more DCAs you assign to a Query Engine, the faster the query processes.

The **Agents** tab also contains a button to restore default settings and an **Advanced** button to set the directories where the Slave and

| Query E | ngine Settin | gs | | |
|---|---|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| ECS | Sessions | IP Cache S | QE Usage | Bandwidth Schedule |
| Error Log | ging Jobs | Advanced | Security | Advanced Security |
| Cache | Agents | Event Logging | Options | Password Analysis |
| Agent | | butdown | Number of Ac | ents Prioritu |
| | 180 | natdown | Riamber or Ag | Normal |
| DCA | 180 | | 6 | Normal |
| SRA | 180 | | 15 | Normal |
| • | | | | Þ |
| | | | | |
| - Disk S | pace | | | |
| - Disk Sj *Minin | pace 1um Free: 5 | 0 MB | *FreeThresho | old: 10 MB |
| Disk Sj *Minim * Indicate | pace num Free: 5 es dynamic fiel | i0 MB | *FreeThresho | old: 10 MB |
| Disk S *Minin * Indicate Restore | pace hum Free: 5 s dynamic fiel Defaults | i0 MB | *FreeThresho | old: 10 MB |

Master Query Engine store collected data. Click the **Agents** tab to access it.



Note: The Slave Query Engine creates the number of DCAs you specify, plus an additional DCA that is reserved for special "quick queries."

To set the DCA options

1 From the **Agents** tab, double-click on a data collection agent.

The Agents processes dialog appears.

| E DCA | × |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Shutdown Agent | ОК |
| I *Never Shutdown | Cancel |
| 180 Seconds | Help |
| Agent parameters | |
| Maximum number of Concurrent Ager | nts: 6 🔹 |
| *Priority Normal | |
| Registration Time Out 180 | Seconds |
| *Maximum number of retries: | 3 + |
| * Indicates dynamic field. | estore Defaults |

Fig. 182 Agents Processes Dialog

170 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

- 2 In the **Shutdown Agent** field, select the **Never Shutdown** option or enter the number of seconds the Query Engine waits for this agent to respond to a request.
- **3** In the **Maximum Number of Concurrent Agents** field, enter the number of DCAs you want this Query Engine to use to collect data.
- 4 In the **Priority** field, the value can be set to **Normal** or **Idle**. If the Agent displays **Normal**, it is currently processing a query request. If it is **Idle**, the Agent is waiting for a job request.
- **5** In the **Registration Time Out** field, enter the number of seconds you want the Query Engine to wait for a response from a DCA before it reassigns the work to a different DCA.

Disk Space Box The **Disk Space** box contains the **Minimum Free** and the **Free Threshold** fields. The **Minimum Free** field sets the minimum disk space required to process an atomic job. It prevents a query or atomic job from running the disk space below the specified figure. The default is 50 MB.

The **Free Threshold** field specifies the additional amount of disk space above the disk space **Minimum Free** required for a DCA or Slave Query Engine to accept a job.

If the **Minimum Free** is set to 50 MB, and the **Free Threshold** is set to 10 MB, there must be at least 60 MB of free disk space on the machine for the job to be accepted.

To set disk space options

- **1** In the **Minimum Free** field, enter the number of megabytes that must be available for a query to run, or accept the default.
- 2 In the **Free Threshold** field, enter the number of megabytes acceptable to allow the query to process, or accept the default.

Advanced Button W

| When clicked, the Advanced button displays the Agent Advanced |
|---|
| Settings dialog. |

| A | gent Advanced ! | Settings | × |
|---|--|------------------------------------|---|
| | – Data Directory – Directory: | rogram Files\BindView\BVNTQE\Data\ | |
| | Share Name: | BVQEDS\$ | |
| | – Master Data Dire | ctory | |
| | Directory: C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\ | | |
| | Share Name: | BVQEMDS\$ | |
| | | OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 183 Agent Advanced Settings Dialog

This dialog allows you to set the directory where the Master and Slave Query Engines store the collected data. It contains two boxes: **Data Directory** and **Master Data Directory**.

The **Data Directory** box contains the **Directory** field and the **Share Name** field. The **Directory** field contains the name of the directory where the DCAs store the data collected. The **Share Name** field displays the name of the share where the Query Engine retrieves the data the DCAs collect.

The **Master Data Directory** box is only accessible on machines with a Master Query Engine installed. It contains the **Directory** and **Share Name** fields. The **Directory** field contains the name of the directory where the Master can store data received from all DCAs (Master and Slave) while waiting for the Console to collect the information. The **Share Name** field contains the name of the share.

To set the data directory

1 In the **Directory** field in the **Data Directory** box, enter the directory where the DCA should store the collected data and proceed to Step 4 on page 172, or click the browse button to the right of the **Directory** field.



The Browse dialog appears.

Fig. 184 Browse Dialog – Data Directory Selection

- 2 From the **Directories** list, select the directory where the DCA should store the collected data. The directory path appears in the **Path** field.
- **3** Click **OK**. The **Directory** field displays the directory path you chose from the **Browse** dialog.
- 4 In the **Share Name** field, enter the name of the share.

• To set the master data directory

The **Master Data Directory** box is only available on machines running a Master Query Engine, so if you are not setting options for DCAs on a machine running a Master, proceed to "Event Logging Tab" on page 173.

1 In the **Directory** field in the **Data Directory** box, enter the directory where the DCA should store the collected data and proceed to Step 4, or click the browse button to the right of the

Directory field. In the **Share Name** field, enter the name of the share.

- **Event Logging Tab** The **Event Logging** tab (Fig. 185), allows you to select specific events from a list that a Query Engine (Master or Slave) may encounter. This enables you to keep a record of events and notify a specific machine when selected events occur.
- **Query Engine Events** The **Query Engine Events** list displays a list of events with boxes to the left of each event. The list includes events related to DCA creation and termination; cache start, finish, and failure; query start and finish; RPC initialization; disk space; and Console connection. The boxes to the left of the events enable you to select those events to record and/or report those events.

To set event logging options

1 Click the **Event Logging** tab.



Fig. 185 Query Engine Settings – Event Logging Tab

2 From the **Query Engine Events** list, select the box to the left of the event that you want to report on or record.

Configure Button

When one or more events in the **Query Engine Events** list is selected, and the **Configure** button is clicked, the **Event Configuration** dialog appears.

| Event Configuration | × |
|--|----------------------|
| Options ✓ *NT Application Log *File: Execute Program ✓ *Enable %C - Computer Name, %D - Date, %T - Time, %M - Message *Command Line: | OK Cancel Help |
| *Send Message: Computer Name Add Remove * Indicates dynamic field. | |

Fig. 186 Event Configuration Dialog

Using this dialog, you can set bv-Config to perform a variety of tasks when the selected events occur. The **Event Configuration** dialog contains one large **Options** box that contains four options: **NT Application Log**, **File**, **Execute Program**, and **Send Message**. These options are not mutually exclusive. You may choose any or all of these options.

The **NT Application Log** option allows you to set bv-Config to create or append the NT application log file when the selected event occurs.

If the **File** option is selected, bv-Config creates or appends the file entered in the field to the right of the **File** option when the selected event occurs.

The **Execute Program** box contains the **Enable** option and the **Command Line** field. When this option is enabled, the command entered in the **Command Line** field is executed when the selected event occurs. "Command Line Parameters" on page 175 displays the valid command line parameters and a description of the information each provides when an error log is created.

Note: The **Execute Program** option is only enabled when the Query Engine is installed on an NTFS volume.

| Variable | Variable Name | Description |
|----------|---------------|---|
| %C | Computer Name | Name of the computer running the Query Engine that generated the event. |
| %D | Date | Date on which the event occurred. |
| %Т | Time | Time at which the event occurred. |
| %M | Message | Event log message that was created when this event occurred. |

Table 1 Command Line Parameters

The **Send Message** box contains the **Computer Name** list, and the **Add** and **Remove** buttons. When Send Message is selected, the machines displaying in the **Computer Name** list receive a message each time the selected event occurs.

► To set advanced event configuration

- **1** Select the event to configure from the **Query Engine Events** list.
- 2 Click **Configure**. The **Event Configuration** dialog appears.

Step 3 through Step 6 are optional.

- **3** The default option is **NT Application Log**. You may turn off this option by clicking it, or you may leave it selected and select additional options.
- 4 Select **File**, and enter the name of the file where you want to log the event in the box to the right of the **File** option.
- **5** Select **Enable** in the **Execute Program** box, and enter the commands to execute if the selected event occurs.

Note: For security reasons, the program you set to run must be located in the directory where the Query Engine is located.

6 Select **Send Message**, and click the **Add** button to display the **Select Computer** dialog.

| Select Computer | × |
|--|--------|
| | OK |
| Computer: | Cancel |
| Select Computer: | Help |
| 🛃 AD | |
| 19ETHER 19IMGPC 20ETHER 22ETHER 22ETHER 23ETHER 23FOURLEAF 23FOURLEAF | - |

Fig. 187 Select Computer Dialog

- ► To add a reporting computer
 - 1 From the **Select Computer** list, select the name of the computer where you want the selected event reported. The **Computer** field displays the computer chosen from the list.
 - 2 Click **OK**. The **Event Configuration** dialog displays the machine selected from the **Select Computer** dialog.
 - **3** Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you have selected all computers where you want the selected event reported.
 - 4 Click **OK** to close the **Event Configuration** dialog.
 - **5** Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or select another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

To remove a reporting computer

- **1** To remove a computer from the **Computer Name** list, select the computer name and click the **Remove** button.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the **Event Configuration** dialog.
- **3** Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or select another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

Options Tab The **Options** tab is available for both Master and Slave Query Engines. It allows you to set the reporting domain for the Query Engine and to set the cache file directory name, file name, and share name where the BindView RMS Console can collect the data gathered by the Master Query Engine and all Slave Query Engines in its charge. It contains three boxes: **Reporting Mode, Cache**,

and **TCP/IP settings**. The **Cache** box is only accessible on machines where a Master is installed.

| ┇ Query Engine Settir | ngs X |
|--|---|
| ECS Sessions Error Logging Jobs Cache Agents Reporting Mode Domain | IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Advanced Security Advanced Security Event Logging Options Password Analysis |
| Cache | |
| Directory: | C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\C: |
| File Name: | ntcache.chc |
| Share Name: | BVQECDS\$ |
| TCP/IP settings | |
| Port | |
| | OK Cancel Help |



The **Reporting Mode** box displays the **Domain** name or **Workgroup** machine name. This is the domain/workgroup on which the selected Query Engine will report. Normally, a Query Engine will report on its own domain; however, you can set it to report on a different domain.

Note: If you set a Query Engine to report on a domain other than the one in which it is installed, the Query Engine account must have administrative rights on all machines on which it will report. This means that the account must be manually placed in each machine's Local Administrator group or granted access through the Domain Administrators group.

• To set the reporting mode

- 1 From the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, click the **Options** tab. The **Options** tab is displayed, as shown in Fig. 188.
- 2 Use the arrow to the right of the **Domain** box to display a list of available domains.
- 3 Select the domain on which this Query Engine will report. Click OK. If you are setting Slave Query Engine options or do not want to alter the cache options for a Master Query Engine, proceed to Step 4 on page 178.

Optional: If you are setting options for a Master Query Engine, accept the default directory path, file name and share name for the Master Query Engine, or enter the directory path in the **Directory** field, the file name in the **File Name** field, and the

share name in the **Share Name** field, and proceed to Step 4 on page 178.

If you do not know the directory path, follow the steps outlined in the section "To select the directory path" that follows.

Note: You can change the default file name and share name; however, you must restart the Query Engine after changing the default in order for your changes to take effect.

• To select the directory path

1 Click the browse button to the right of the **Directory** field.

The **Browse** dialog appears.

| rowse | × |
|--|--------|
| Browse for the directory or file to use. | OK |
| Path | Cancel |
| C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\Data\ | Help |
| Directories | |
| C.\ Documents and Settings Intpub Netrc Program Files FICYCLER System Volume Information WINNT | |



- **2** Use the **Directories** list to locate and select the directory path. The selected path appears in the **Path** field.
- **3** Click **OK**. The directory path appears in the **Directory** field in the **Cache** box on the **Options** tab.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

Optional: The **TCP/IP Port** setting allows you to specify the port number that the Query Engine is listening on for the RPC request. If you do not specify a port number, the Query Engine will allow the RPC system to dynamically select a port to listen on.

Password Analysis Tab

The **Password Analysis** tab contains the **ASCII Password File** and the **Internal Password File** boxes. This tab is available for both Master and Slave Query Engines.

| 🖡 Query Engine Settings 🛛 🛛 🗙 |
|--|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Error Logging Jobs Advanced Security Advanced Security Cache Agents Event Logging Options Password Analysis |
| *ASCII Password File Computer: ANTONITO |
| C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\BVPass.dat |
| *Internal Password File |
| Computer: ANTONITO |
| C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\Data\BV Internal Pass |
| |
| OK Cancel Help |



The **ASCII Password File** field contains the path where the pure 8-bit ASCII file you maintain for password analysis resides. This is a simple one-word-per-line file. The **Internal Password File** field contains the path where the converted ASCII file resides.

When running password analysis, the Internal password file, which has been converted from ASCII to Unicode, is checked against the ASCII password file. If changes have been made since the last Unicode update, the Query Engine calls for the ASCII file and updates it to Unicode. Password Analysis then runs from the file path specified in the Unicode **Internal Password File**.

• To set the ASCII password file

1 Enter the path where the ASCII password file resides, and proceed to Step 4 on page 180 of the "To Set the ASCII Password File" section.

If you do not know the path where the ASCII password file is located or where you want to place it, click the browse button to the right of the **ASCII Password File** field to display the **Browse** dialog, which you can use to locate and select the path.

| rowse | > | |
|--|--------|--|
| Browse for the directory or file to use. | ОК | |
| The path is relative to \\ANTUNITU. | Cancel | |
| C:\Program Files\BindView\BVNTQE\Data\ | Help | |
| Directories | | |
| CN CN Documents and Settings Cnetpub Cnetpub | | |

The **Browse** dialog appears.



- 2 From the **Directories** list, search for and select the directory path where the converted ASCII password file resides. After selecting the path, it appears in the **Path** field.
- 3 Click OK. The path you selected from the **Browse** dialog appears in the **ASCII Password File** field on the **Password Analysis** tab.
- 4 Click OK to close the Query Engine Settings dialog, proceed to "To set the internal password file", or click another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

► To set the internal password file

1 Enter the directory path where the Unicode password file resides in the **Internal Password File** field, and proceed to Step 4.

If you do not know the path where the Internal password file is located or where you want to place it, use the browse button to the right of the **Internal Password File** field to locate and select the path.

- 2 From the **Directories** list, search for and select the directory path where the ASCII password file resides. After selecting the path, it appears in the **Path** field.
- 3 Click **OK**. The path you selected from the Browse dialog appears in the **Internal Password File** field on the **Password Analysis** tab.
- 4 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

Error Logging Tab

The **Error Logging** tab is available on machines where both Slave and Master Query Engines are installed. It contains the **Enable Error Logging** option and two boxes: **Output logging information to** and **Reporting Level**.
Warning: The Error Logging tab and its options should only be changed at the request of BindView Technical Support or a BindView programmer.

- To enable error logging
 - **1** Click the **Error Logging** tab.
 - 2 Click the **Enable Error Logging** option. The **Output logging information to** and **Reporting Level** boxes and the options located in each become available.

| 🛺 Query Engine Settings | × |
|--|----------------------------|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidt Cache Agents Event Logging Options Passwo Entro Logging Johns Advanced Security Advance | h Schedule Ird Analysis |
| Enable Error Logging Output logging information to | |
| C:\BVNTError.log | |
| Limit File Size: 512 Console Maximum Wrap Size: 512 | KB Lines |
| Cutput to Debug Window | |
| Sections BVNTDataSource | 7 |
| Leve: Verbose | 7 |
| OK Cancel | Help |

Fig. 192 Query Engine Settings – Error Logging Tab

When you select **Enable Error Logging**, this option enables the **Log File**, **Console**, and **Output to Debug Window** options. These options allow you to log errors in data collection to your choice of a specific log file, a debug console, or an output window.

Using the **Log File** option, you can specify a file and path where the log will reside. You can also set log file size limit to help maintain machine resources. This error log must be manually cleaned after reviewing. You can either delete parts of the log, or delete the entire file. If you choose to delete the entire file, the Query Engine will re-create it the next time an error is encountered during query processing.

When enabled, the **Console** option writes errors to the console. The **Maximum Wrap Size** option becomes available. Use this option to set the maximum number of lines that can be written to the console.

The **Output to Debug Window** option writes log file information to a file using the debugging tool. BindView programmers and Technical Support staff use this setting to determine the location of and the reason for data collection errors.

8: Configuring Query Engine Settings 181

Output logging information to

Note: You can select any one or all of the output logging options.

To log errors to a log file

- **1** Choose **Log File**. By default, the error log file is BVNTError.log. To accept this directory, proceed to Step 4 on page 182.
- 2 Change the file and path where the log file is stored by clicking the browse button to the right of the **Log File** option.

The **Browse** dialog appears.



Fig. 193 Browse Dialog

- **3** From the **Directories** list, select the path where you want the log file to reside. The chosen path displays in the **Path** box.
- 4 You can choose an existing file to log the error events to, or create a new file. To create a new file, in the **Path** field, enter the file name followed by .LOG at the end of the chosen path.

Optional: By default, the **Limit File Size** option is set to 512 KB. You can decrease the size to as little as 500 KB or increase it to as much as 10,000 KB. Enter the number of kilobytes for the file size limit.

Warning: If you deselect the Limit File Size check box, the error log can potentially fill the machine's entire hard drive. This can potentially lead to a server lockup.

To set error logging to Output to Debug Window

- 1 Click the **Output to Debug Window** option.
- 2 Proceed to "Reporting Level", click OK to close the Query Engine Settings dialog, or click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

Reporting Level The **Reporting Level** box provides options to report on multiple levels. You can report on errors that occur in all aspects of a query,

or report only on specific query segments (i.e. BVNTLastLogon, BVNTRPC, Remote Scheduler Dispatcher). This box includes a **Sections** button, and **Sections** and **Level** boxes.

To select only one reporting type

- **1** Use the **Sections** list to the right of the **Sections** button to select the reporting type.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings, or proceed to "To set the reporting level".
- > To set the reporting level to multiple selections
 - **1** Click the **Sections** button.

The Select Logging Sections dialog appears.

| ect Logging Sections | |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| Logging Sections | |
| ■BVNTDataSource | ▲ OK |
| ☑BVNTLastLogon | |
| ☑BVNTPostFilterEnumerators | Cancel |
| ■BVNTRPC | |
| ☑BVNTSysObjs | |
| ☑BVNTUninstall | |
| ✓BVNTQEConfig | |
| ✓BVDBAccess | |
| ☑ BVNTUtils | |
| Data Collection Agent | |
| Enterprise Configuration Service | |
| ✓ECSCommon | Select All |
| ✓ECSDB | |
| ✓BVNTCacheManager | |



Optional: Click the **Select All** button to report on all options that display in the **Logging Sections** list, or click **Clear All** to choose to report on none of the options in the list.

If you plan to report on only a few of the options displayed on the **Select Logging Sections** dialog, click the **Clear All** button, and select only those options on which you want to report.

- **2** After selecting the log sections, click **OK**. The **Error Logging** tab reappears.
- 3 Click **OK** to close the Query Engine Settings tab, select another tab to alter other Query Engine settings, or proceed to "To set the reporting level", next.
- To set the reporting level
 - 1 Use the **Level** box to select the reporting level. Select either **Normal**, **Diagnostic**, or **Verbose**.
 - Normal provides minimal error detail
 - **Diagnostic** provides very detailed error logging that can be used by BindView Technical Support and programmers to determine possible source code errors.

Jobs Tab

- **Verbose** provides detailed error logging that can help you determine the source of a reporting problem.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or select another tab to alter Query Engine settings.

The **Jobs** tab contains settings that define how the selected Query Engine (Slave or Master) handles each part of a query (atomic job). Each atomic job is handled by a Data Collection Agent (DCA). Three boxes are displayed on the **Jobs** tab: **Atomic Job**, **Status Update Job**, and **Distribution Job** (Fig. 195).

| 111 a | |
|---|---|
| Query Engine Settings | X |
| ECS Sessions IP Cache Cache Agents Event Log Error Logging Jobs Advar | SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule ging Options Password Analysis nced Security Advanced Security |
| Atomic Job *Agent Max Retry: | Distribution Job *Execute Max Retry: 5 |
| "Retry Interval(sec): | *Retry Interval 1 *Remove Max Retry: 5 |
| - Status Update Job | *Hetry Interval |
| *Interval (min): 10 | Distribute Max Hetry: 13 |
| * Indicates dynamic field. | Restore Defaults |
| (| DK Cancel Help |

Fig. 195 Query Engine Settings - Jobs Tab

| Atomic Job | The Atomic Job box contains three settings: Agent Max Retry, Update Max Retry, and Retry Interval (sec). The Agent Max Retry option sets the maximum number of times a Query Engine attempts to give a DCA a job before it fails and reports the failure to the Console. The Update Max Retry options sets the number of times the Slave Query Engine tries to tell the Master Query Engine that the atomic job files are ready for collection. The Retry Interval is the number of seconds the Query Engine waits between attempts to notify the Master Query Engine that atomic job files are ready. |
|-------------------|---|
| Status Update Job | A Master Query Engine periodically requests status updates from all Slaves to which it has distributed active jobs. The Status Update Job box contains a single field, Interval . This is the time interval in minutes between status updates. |
| Distribution Job | When a Master Query Engine attempts to distribute a Multi Job to a Slave Query Engine and fails (e.g network failure), it will retry the job distribution up to the number of times specified in the Execute |

| Max Retry field before reassigning the Multi Job to another Slave. |
|---|
| The Retry Interval for executing retries is the time in seconds |
| between retry attempts to distribute the Multi Job to that Slave. |

When a query is aborted, the Master Query Engine issues job removal instructions to every Slave Query Engine that is processing jobs for that query. If the Master cannot communicate with a Slave (e.g. network failure), it will retry the job up to the number of times specified in the **Remove Max Retry** field. The **Retry Interval** for removal of retries is the time in seconds between retry attempts to remove the Multi Job from that Slave Query Engine.

When a Master Query Engine reaches the Execute Max Retry count while attempting to distribute the Multi Job to a Slave Query Engine, it will then attempt to distribute the Multi Job to other Slaves. The **Distribute Max Retry** field specifies how many different Slave Query Engines the Master will attempt before quitting the distribution and returning an exception to the BindView Console.

Restore Defaults Button Each field in the three boxes contains a default setting. If you have changed certain DCA settings and want to revert back to the defaults, you can do so by clicking the **Restore Defaults** button.

Advanced Tab The Advanced tab contains Master Query Engine (MQE) settings and Slave Query Engine (SQE) settings. It is only available on machines where a Master Query Engine is installed.

| 😳 Query Engine Settings 🛛 🛛 🗙 | |
|--|---|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache Cache Agents Event Loggin Error Logging Jobs Advance | SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule ng Options Password Analysis ed Security Advanced Security |
| MQE Settings Thread Count Idle Interval (sec) 5 Aging Settings Interval (min) 2 Retries/Purge 2 | SQE Settings *Ping Max Retry 5 *Delay/Retry (sec) 5 Thread Count 4 *Ping Freq (min) 2 |
| * Indicates dynamic field. Restore Defaults | |
| OK | Cancel Help |

Fig. 196 Query Engine Settings – Advanced Tab

There are three boxes on this dialog: **MQE Settings**, **Aging Settings**, and **SQE Settings**.

MQE SettingsThe MQE Settings box contains two fields: Thread Count andIdle Interval. The Thread Count field sets the number of threads

the Master Query Engine can use to distribute multi-jobs and collect atomic job files.

The **Idle Interval** field sets the number of seconds the Master Query Engine should wait for query requests from a Console, or information back from Slaves, before beginning idle processing. Idle processing includes purging files, checking queue integrity, rereading the registry queue.

Aging Settings The Aging Settings box contains two fields: Interval (min) and Retries/Purge. Aging settings are the fault tolerance settings that control how a Slave Query Engine handles query data that has never been collected by a Master. After a Slave completes a job and until the Master collects that job, the Slave will periodically check with the Master to make sure the query is still valid. The Interval field sets the number of minutes between these checks. If a query is no longer valid the Slave Query Engine will purge all collected data for that query. If for some reason (e.g. network failure) the Slave cannot communicate with the Master, it will retry up to the number of times specified in the Retries/Purge field before purging all data for a query.

SQE SettingsThe SQE Settings box contains four fields: Ping Max Retry,
Delay/Retry, Thread Count, and Ping Freq. The Ping Max
Retry field sets the number of times the Master Query Engine
attempts to contact a Slave Query Engine to make sure the Slave is
active and available. The Delay/Retry field sets the number of
seconds between intervals of attempting to contact the Slave Query
Engine. The Thread Count field sets the number of threads the
Master can use to ping Slave Query Engine contacts the Slave Query
Engines to make sure they are still responding. If the first attempt
fails, the Ping Max Retry field determines the number of
subsequent attempts that are made, and the Delay/Retry field
determines the number of seconds the Master will wait between
each attempt to contact the Slave.

Advanced SecurityThe Advanced SecurityTab is available only on machines running
a Master Query Engine. This tab contains the advanced security
settings for the Master and each of its Slave Query Engines.

| Query Engine Settings | | |
|---|--|--|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Cache Agents Event Logging Options Password Analysis Error Logging Jobs Advanced Security Advanced Security IP Security IP security IP security IP security IP security "Enable IP verifications IP security IP findree IP address mismatches "Enforce IP address mismatches | | |
| Query job security | | |
| | | |
| ✓ *Require authentication | | |
| Reject anonymous connections | | |
| Enable Firewall exception registration Firewall options | | |
| * Indicates dynamic field. | | |
| OK Cancel Help | | |

Fig. 197 Query Engine Settings - Advanced Security Tab

This tab contains three boxes: **IP Security**, **Query job security**, and **Additional Security Settings**.

| IP Security | The IP Security box contains all of the IP security options. You can choose to enable IP verifications, enable reverse DNS IP address verification, and enforce IP address mismatches. When you choose to enable reverse DNS IP address verification, the verification takes place when the atomic job data is transferred from the SQE to the MQE. When you choose the enforce IP address mismatches option, the MQE will maintain a cache of IP address for each client session. When the session is established, the client's IP address is added to the cache as a valid address and marked as the primary address. |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Query Job Security | The Query Job Security box contains the Require credentials for query jobs and Accept Proxy queries options. The Require credentials for query jobs option allows you to choose whether you want to require user credentials for all query jobs that run. The Accept Proxy queries option allows you to enable proxy queries into your query jobs. Proxy queries are queries that are generated in one domain to a QE in another domain to retrieve the data. For example, if one of the users with permissions to an object resides in a different domain, the system will generate a query to that other domain to get the data. |
| Additional Security Settings | The Additional Security Settings tab contains the advanced security options. These options allow you to: Enable secure SQE->MQE file transfers, Require authentication, and Reject anonymous connections. |
| | The Enable SQE->MQE file transfers option allows the Remote Procedure Call (RPC) to authenticate each call and encrypt the data |
| | 8: Configuring Query Engine Settings 187 |

| | sent over the wire. This applies to all data that goes between the Slave and Master Query Engines. The Require authentication option allows for rejection of any incoming RPC call if it cannot impersonate the RPC client. This enforces tighter security for all incoming calls. The Reject anonymous connections option allows for rejection of an incoming call passed with empty credentials, even if it is able to be authenticated. Therefore, an authenticated call using an empty username and password will be rejected. |
|---|---|
| Master Query Engine/ Information Server Communication Protocol | The standard method of communication that is used between Master and Slave Query Engines and the Information Server is Remote Procedure Call (RPC) via TCP/IP. Once you install bv- Control for Windows, this communication is automatically encrypted for security purposes. The RPC subsystem negotiates the highest level of encryption protocols that it can. You can choose to not encrypt the data by disabling the Require authentication setting. |
| Firewall Options | For machines running Microsoft® Windows XP® Service Pack 2 with the Windows firewall, enabling the Firewall exception registration option will ensure that the query engine is registered with the application exception list so that it will work with the firewall. You set the Firewall options by clicking the Firewall options button. |
| | The Ouery Engine Firewall Scope Settings dialog appears. |

C

| Query Engine Firewall Scope Settings | × | |
|--|---|--|
| To define the set of computers for which this program will accept connections, click an option below. | | |
| If you select Custom list, you can type a comma-delimited list of IP addresses and/or subnets. | | |
| C Any computer (including those on the internet) | | |
| • My network (subnet) only | | |
| C Custom list | | |
| | | |
| Example: 198.162.114.201, 198.162.114.201/255.255.255.0 | | |
| OK Cancel Help | | |

Fig. 198 Query Engine Firewall Scope Settings dialog

Use this dialog to define the set of computers for which the program will accept connections.

Any computer (including those on the internet) - may connect to the Query Engine service. The connection may be rejected, but the Windows Firewall will let it in.

My network (subnet) only - any computer on my subnet (defined by Microsoft) may connect to the Query Engine service. It's possible that the connection may still be rejected.

Custom list - Only computers with IP addresses in the list will be allowed to connect to the Query Engine service. This is a comma delimited list and can be individual IP addresses or an

IP address and subnet mask. Example: 198.162.114.201, 198.162.114.201/255.255.255.0

Security Tab

The **Security** tab is available only on machines running a Master Query Engine (MQE). This tab controls the type of security an MQE and each of its Slave Query Engines (SQE) will use.

| Query Engine Settings |
|--|
| ECS Sessions IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule |
| Error Logging Lobs Advanced Security Advanced Security |
| Group Security |
| Enabled |
| Name |
| |
| |
| |
| Add Remove |
| |
| Password Security |
| *Password: *Confirm : |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |
| |
| |
| |
| * Indicates dynamic field. |
| OK Cancel Help |
| |



The Legacy Security tab contains two boxes: **Group Security** and **Password Security**.

Group Security The **Group Security** box contains an **Enable** box, a **Name** list, and an **Add** and **Remove** button. When **Enable** is selected, the **Name** list and **Add** and **Remove** buttons become available. The **Name** list contains the names of those user and group accounts who are members of the BindView Administrators group, and therefore have access to network data for the selected Query Engine. Only user members of the local group, BindView Administrators, on the machine running the Query Engine service can use the Query Engine to collect data.

Note: When Group Security is enabled, each domain containing a Query Engine must trust the Console user's domain.

► To set group security

- 1 Select the **Security** tab from the **Query Engine Settings** dialog.
- 2 In the **Group Security** box, click **Enable**.

3 Click **Add**. The **Add** button displays the **Add User and Group** dialog.

| Add User And Group | × |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| List Names From: SOUTH | IWESTERNCOL |
| Names: | |
| Name | Comment |
| 🕵 Cert Publishers | Enterprise certification and renewal |
| 🕵 Domain Admins | Designated administrators of the doi |
| 💯 Domain Computers | All workstations and servers joined t |
| 💯 Domain Controllers | All domain controllers in the domain |
| 💯 Domain Guests | All domain guests |
| Domain Users | All domain users |
| | |
| Add | Remove Type in |
| Add Names: | |
| Name | Comment |
| • | Þ |
| ОК | Cancel Help |

Fig. 200 Add User and Group Dialog

Note: If you have a large number of users and groups in a domain, the Names list will take a few seconds to populate.

- **4** From the **Names** list, select the user and/or group accounts to which you want to grant network data access. Multi-select capabilities are available.
- **5** After selecting all the user and group accounts, click the **Add** button to add them to the **Add Names** box.
- 6 Click OK.

The **Add User and Group** dialog closes and the user and group accounts you selected appear in the **Names** list in the **Group Security** box. Proceed to "Password Security", next, if you want to use both Password and Group Security.

Optional: If you need to alter the list of user and group accounts (remove a user or group account) that can access network data, select the user or group account(s) from the **Names** list, and click **Remove.** You can also type in the name of the group or user account you wish to set security to. To do this, click the **Type in** button. The **Type In Names** dialog appears. Type in the names separated by commas and click **OK**.

7 Click OK to set Group Security and close the Query Engine Settings dialog, or click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

If you want to use both Group and Password Security to secure the data collected by the Query Engine, proceed to "Password Security", next.

190 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Password Security The **Password Security** box contains an **Enabled** box, the **Password** field, and the **Confirm Password** field. When **Enabled** is selected, the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields become available.

The **Password** field establishes the password for the Query Engine Service. The **Confirm Password** field allows you to verify the password you selected. Password Security supplies a secure connection to a Query Engine Service. Once enabled, whenever Console users attempt to add or remove a Query Engine to or from a Connection Database, they must supply the correct password in order to gain access to the Query Engine.

To set up password security

ECS Tab

- **1** In the **Password Security** box, select **Enabled**.
- 2 Enter and confirm the password for the Query Engine in the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields.
- 3 Click **OK** to set Password Security and close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

The **ECS** tab is available for both Master and Slave Query Engines. It defines the ECS Database that tracks the selected Query Engine.

| 2000 | | |
|---|---|--|
| Query E | ngine Setti | ngs X |
| Error Logg Cache ECS Networ Enter th and loc | ging Jobs Agents J Sessions J k Information he Enterprise vation information | Advanced Security Advanced Security Event Logging Options Password Analysis IP Cache SQE Usage Bandwidth Schedule Configuration Service network settings tion. |
| ר ר ז | FCP/IP Hostr FCP/IP Addre Port: | name: adelossa-test2 qnt-canada.qnt-am ess: 10.200.13.199 |
| Database C:\Progr | e am Files\Bin | dView\BVNTQE\Cache\SQE.edb Sync Master Now! |
| | | OK Cancel Help |

Fig. 201 Query Engine Settings – ECS Tab

Using this tab, you can set the ECS and the database path where the ECS database resides. This tab contains the following fields.

- **NetBIOS Name** The Windows computer name for the machine where the ECS is installed.
- **TCP/IP Hostname** The TCP/IP Hostname of the machine where the ECS is installed.

- **TCP/IP Address** The physical address that identifies the machine to TCP/IP. It is the TCP/IP address of the machine where the ECS is installed.
- **Port** Allows you to specify the TCP/IP port number.
- **Database Path** The first time a Master Query Engine receives a request for information, it asks the ECS database for a list of Slave Query Engines it can use for data collection, their protocol sequences, and any distribution rules that apply to the Master. Once it receives this information, it stores it in the file specified in this field.
- To change ECS location settings
 - 1 In the **NetBIOS Name** field, type the computer name where the ECS is installed and proceed to Step 4 on page 192, or click the browse button to the right of the field to select a computer.

| | OK |
|------------------|--------|
| Computer: | Cancel |
| Select Computer: | Help |
| R QNT-CANADA | |
| PADELOSSA-TEST2 | |
| UNT-ACTON-STD | |
| UNT-AJAX-STD | |
| A QNT-CYPRUS | |
| 🖉 👰 QNT-ENGLAND | |
| 🛛 🚑 QNT-FIJI | |
| QNT-FRANCE | - |

The **Select Computer** dialog appears.

Fig. 202 Select Computer Dialog

- 2 Use the **Select Computer** list to locate and select the computer running the ECS. The computer you select will appear in the **Computer** field.
- Click OK. The computer you selected from the Select Computer dialog displays in the NetBIOS Name field on the ECS tab.
- 4 Enter the TCP/IP host name and the TCP/IP Address in the TCP/IP Hostname and TCP/IP Address fields, respectively. Or, click the update button to the right of the TCP/IP Address field to update the TCP/IP host name and TCP/IP address to those applicable to the computer you selected in the NetBIOS Name field.

Optional: The **Port** box allows you to specify the port number that the Query Engine is listening on for the RPC request. If you do not specify a port number, the Query Engine will allow the RPC system to dynamically select a port to listen on.

192 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Note: When you change the ECS computer, you should update the database. To do this, you may need to update the ECS database. See "Sync Master Now" on page 193 for information about updating the database.

Database Path The first time a Master Query Engine receives a request for information, it asks the ECS for a list of Slave Query Engines (SQE), their protocol sequences, and any distribution rules that may apply. Once it receives this information, it stores it in the file specified in this field.

To set the database path

- **1** Enter the name of path and database where you want the list stored.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

To sync the master

Sync Master Now

If changes are made to the ECS or distribution rules, it may be necessary to use the **Sync Master Now** button to update the file listed in the **Database Path** field with a current list of Slave Query Engines, protocol sequences, and distribution rules.

- 1 Click the **Sync Master Now** button.
- 2 Click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click another tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

Sessions Tab

The **Sessions** tab is only available on machines running a Master Query Engine. It contains two fields and an **IP Address Restrictions** box. The **Max Concurrent Sessions** field specifies the maximum number of queries this Master Query Engine has been configured to handle requests from, at any given time.

If a Console has requested data from a Master Query Engine and the Master begins processing the query, the **Max Idle Time before Disconnect** field dictates how long the Master will wait for an indication that the Console is still running before it quits the RPC connection to that Console.

To alter sessions settings

1 Click the **Sessions** tab on the **Query Engine Settings** dialog. The **Sessions** tab is displayed.

| Query | Engine S | Settings | | | | ĺ |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Error Log Cache ECS | gging Agen Sessio | Jobs ts Ev ns IP | Advanced vent Logging Cache SG | Security Options EUsage | Adva Pass Bandw | nced Security word Analysis idth Schedule |
| *Max C *Max lo | ioncurrent die Time b | t Session before Dis | s: 🔟 sconnect: 30 | minute | 25 | |
| ×IP Ac | ldress Re Inable Idress | strictions | | | | |
| | | | | | | Add |
| | | | | | R | emove Edit |
| | | | | | | |
| * Indica | tes dynan | nic field. | | | | |
| | | | OK | Can | cel | Help |

Fig. 203 Query Engine Settings – Sessions Tab

- 2 In the **Max Concurrent Sessions** field, type the maximum number of queries you want this Master Query Engine to be able to accept requests from at any given time.
- **3** In the **Max Idle Time Before Disconnect** field, enter the number of minutes you want the Master to wait for a response from the Console before quitting the RPC connection.
- 4 After you have made all changes to the **Sessions** tab, click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click a different tab to alter other Query Engine settings.

IP Address Restrictions This box contains the **Enable** box, and the **Add**, **Remove**, and **Edit** buttons. These options enable you to set a Master Query Engine to service only users who are using Consoles on machines with specific IP addresses.

To set IP Address Restrictions

1 In the **IP Address Restrictions** box, click the **Enable** button. The **IP Address** list, and the **Add**, **Remove**, and **Edit** buttons become available.

194 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

2 Click the Add button. The TCP/IP Restriction dialog appears.

| TCP/IP Restriction | | |
|--------------------|--------|--|
| IP Address: | ОК | |
| | Cancel | |
| | | |

Fig. 204 TCP/IP Restriction Dialog

- **3** In the **IP Address** field, type the IP address of the computer from which you want the Query Engine to collect data.
- 4 Click **OK**. The address you entered in the **TCP/IP Restriction** dialog appears in the **IP Address** list on the **Sessions** tab.
- **5** After you have made all changes to the **Sessions** tab, click **OK** to close the **Query Engine Settings** dialog, or click a different tab to alter other Query Engine settings.
- To edit a TCP/IP address
 - Select the address you want to edit, and click the Edit button. The TCP/IP Restriction dialog appears, as shown in Fig. 204.
 - **2** Use the **IP Address** field to change the TCP/IP address.
 - 3 Click **OK**. The changed address appears in the **IP Address** list on the **Sessions** tab.

To remove a TCP/IP address

- **1** From the **IP Address** list, select the address you want to remove.
- 2 Click the **Remove** button. The address is deleted from the **IP Address** list.

IP Cache Tab

The IP Cache tab allows you to schedule the cache update interval in minutes as well as specify the thread count for each IP cache.

| 🔒 Query Engine Settings | × |
|--|--|
| Error Logging Jobs Advanced Cache Agents Event Logging ECS Sessions IP Cache S | Security Advanced Security Options Password Analysis QE Usage Bandwidth Schedule |
| *Resolved cache update interval | 1440 minutes |
| *Unresolved cache update interval | 30 minutes |
| *Shared thread count | 64 |
| *Refine thread count | 5 |
| * Indicates dynamic field. | Restore Defaults |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| OK | Cancel Help |



- **Resolved cache update interval** This field indicates the period of time in minutes from the beginning of one resolved cache update to the beginning of the next update.
- **Unresolved cache update interval** This field indicates the period of time in minutes from the beginning of one unresolved cache update to the beginning of the next update.
- Shared thread count This field allows you to indicate the amount of thread pools that the MQE uses when resolving the list of NetBIOS names into the scope. The shared thread pool can cause a backup of jobs when more than one job submits its targets into the shared thread pool. Therefore, the refined thread pool is created by each job to resolve its own targets.
- **Refine thread count** This field allows you to refine the thread count of the refine threads pool. The refine thread count maximum is 30. If there are too many threads, you will be warned that the maximum number of threads that can be used for IP resolution has been exceeded.

SQE Usage Tab

The SQE Usage tab is displayed for Master Query Engines and shows all of the Slave Query Engines that have been selected for use.

| 🚦 Query Engine Settings | | | | × | |
|--|---|----------------------------------|--|-----------------|--|
| Error Logging Jobs Adv Cache Agents Event L ECS Sessions IP Cach | vanced ogging ne SQE | Security Options Usage | Advanced Securi Password Analysi Bandwidth Schedul | y s e | |
| The available and selected (Engine. | The available and selected Query Engines for this Master Query Engine. | | | | |
| Available Query Engines | | Selected | Query Engines | . | |
| | | ANTONITI | D | | |
| | | | | | |
| | > | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | < | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | OK | l Cano | al Help | | |
| | UK. | | | | |

Fig. 206 Query Engine Settings dialog - SQE Usage Tab

Bandwidth Schedule Tab The Bandwidth Schedule Tab allows you to specify limits on how much bandwidth large data packets will use. You can specify a start time and a limiting amount. If the limiting amount is -1, that indicates that no limit will be used starting at that time. For more information on bandwidth usage, please see below.

| 🚺 Query En | gine Setting | 5 | | x |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Error Loggi Cache ECS | ng Jobs Agents E Sessions IF | Advanced vent Logging PCache SC | Security Options E Usage | Advanced Security Password Analysis Bandwidth Schedule |
| 🗖 Use ba | Use bandwidth restriction schedule | | | |
| Start time a | and limit for bar | ndwidth restricti | ons -1 si <u>c</u> | nifies no limit |
| hrs | : min: | s 🗖 pm | | kBytes/Sec |
| Time : 24 | 4hr clock kE | lytes per Seco | nd Limit | _ |
| | | | | Add |
| | | | | Remove |
| | | | | Change |
| | | | | Þ |
| | | OK | Can | cel Help |

Fig. 207 Query Engine Settings dialog - Bandwidth Schedule Tab

| Bandwidth Restrictions | Bandwidth restrictions limit the amount of traffic between the Master Query Engine and Slave Query Engine. However, not all network traffic is "throttled." | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| | • Throttled Traffic - Communication between the BindView Information Server and Query Engines, such as submitting queries and polling query data, as well as communication between the MQE and SQE. When communication is done through a Remote Procedure Call (RPC), the data throughput rate is throttled. | | | |
| | Non-Throttled Traffic - ECS communication such as retrieving a list of MQE and SQEs for a domain, query engine diagnostics, configuration-related traffic such as distribution rules and adding or removing Query Engines are not throttled. | | | |
| | For example, if bandwidth is restricted to 1 Kilobyte (KB) per second, the throttled network traffic between components is limited to 1 KB per second. The restricted traffic is sent to a staging container. The default size of the container is 15 KB. Once the container is full, the entire contents of the container will be sent over the network. | | | |
| Exporting Query Engine Settings | You can use bv-Control for Windows to export the settings on a Query Engine and apply them to other Query Engines in your environment. To do this, you use the Export Query Engine Settings dialog. | | | |

To export query engine settings

- **1** Right-click on the computer that you want to export settings from.
- 2 Select the **Export Query Engine Settings** option from the drop-down menu.



The Export Query Engine Settings dialog appears.

| Export Query Engine Settings | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|--|--|
| | | | | |
| C Advanced | ECS | | | |
| Agents | Event Logging | RPC Security | | |
| 🔽 Bandwidth Schedule | 🔲 IP Cache | Security | | |
| Cache | 🗖 Jobs | Sessions | | |
| | 🔽 Skip Domain Specific : | Settings | | |
| ОК | Cancel He | lp | | |

This dialog allows you to export the settings into a standard Windows Registry file (.REG). The .REG file can then be pushed to any Query Engines you have. You can also have multiple .REG files for various configurations and then push them to other groups of Query Engines. The **Skip Domain Specific Settings** option will not allow the export to export values that are specific to a domain such as Target Computers. If you plan to move settings across domains, keep this option checked.

Select from the following options of Query Engine settings to be exported:

- Advanced Advanced tab of Query Engine Settings
- Agents Agents tab of Query Engine Settings

- Bandwidth Schedule Bandwidth Schedule tab of Query Engine Settings
- Cache Cache tab of Query Engine Settings (if Skip Domain Specific Settings is checked, the Target Computer is not taken.)
- ECS ECS tab of Query Engine Settings (database path is not taken)
- Event Logging Event Logging tab of Query Engine Settings
- IP Cache IP Cache tab of Query Engine Settings
- Jobs Jobs tab of Query Engine Settings
- Options Options tab of Query Engine Settings (only takes the TCP/IP port settings)
- RPC Security Takes the Registry hive and its subfolders (takes the settings necessary for RPC security)
- Security Advanced Security tab and Security tab of Query Engine Settings
- Sessions Sessions tab of Query Engine Settings

Distribution Rules

S Distribution Rules enable you to control the distribution of queries or data collection from a Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine. A Master has a set of Slaves that it normally assigns its work. In absence of distribution rules, the work is evenly divided among the Slaves in a round-robin order.

The **Add Distribution Rule** dialog allows you to enter the following information for distribution rules: Rule Type, Expression Type, an option to failover to the next rule should the selected query engine to which the rule applies is down, and to specify the distribution rule you want the Query Engine to adhere to.

| Add Distribution I | Rule | × | |
|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Rule Type | | | |
| Absolute | O Wildcard | C Computer Group | |
| Expression Type | | | |
| C Simple | C Regular | | |
| Allow failover to | the next rule if the s | elected QE is down? | |
| Rule | | | |
| | | | |
| | Browse For Gro | ups | |
| Available Query | Engines | Selected Query Engines | |
| ADELOSSA-TEST2 | | | |
| | ОК | Cancel Help | |

Fig. 208 Add Distribution Rule Dialog

You can manually add an absolute, wildcard (simple or regular), or computer group rule or add a rule using the Distribution Rule Wizard.

There are three types of distribution rules:

- **Absolute** assigns a single reporting computer to a single Slave Query Engine.
- **Wildcard** uses pattern matching by assigning a group of computers (whose computer names match a pattern) to a group of Slave Query Engines.
- **Computer Group** assigns all computers defined in a Computer Group to a single or multiple Slave Query Engines.

Associated with each set of distribution rules is a **default group**. The default group is a collection of Slave Query Engines that service queried computers not covered by any of the absolute or wildcard rules. If the default group is empty, the remaining work is divided evenly among all the Slaves assigned to the Master Query Engine in a round-robin fashion.

Rule Type

The rules are evaluated by the Master Query Engine using the following precedence in a top-down manner:

- Absolute Rules
- Wildcard Rules (pattern matching)
- Computer Group

Note: Unicode characters from a character set above 256 are not supported.

Expression Type There are two expression types when using the Wildcard distribution rule: Simple and Regular. Simple expressions simply include an asterisk (*) or a question mark (?) in the expression.

Examples of a simple expression are as follows:

- **Q*1** This expression directs a Slave to query all machine names starting with a Q and ending in 1 with any number of characters in between.
- **S???1** This expression directs a Slave to query all machine names that start with an S, have any three characters between, and end in 1.

With conventions, this type of expression allows you to define a rule using wildcards equivalent to DOS.

Regular Expressions Regular expressions enable you to use regular expression language for pattern matching purposes.

Note: Distribution rules are not case-sensitive. Uppercase and lowercase letters are evaluated equally.

The following tables cover syntax considerations.

Table 2 Syntax Considerations

| Syntax | Results |
|-----------|--|
| A | Matches "A", and "a". Does not match "B", or "Adef", etc. |
| [abc]def | Matches "adef", "bdef" and "cdef". Does not match anything else. |
| [a-c]def | Matches "adef", "bdef" and "cdef". Does not match anything else. |
| [^a-c]def | Does NOT match "adef", "bdef", or "cdef". It does match "ddef", "edef", etc. (^ represents the NOT character) |

| Syntax | Results |
|-------------------|---|
| [:alpha:] | Matches all cases for all alphabetic characters |
| [:alnum:] | Matches all alphanumeric characters |
| [:Ntspecialchar:] | Matches all valid Windows NT/2000 special characters |
| [:Ntchar:] | Matches all valid characters for a Window NT/2000 machine name |
| • | Matches any single character one time. |
| λ | This is an escape-sequence character. Any character following "\" will be evaluated literally, not according to its special function within distribution rules. don\.art will result in a match with "don.art" only, and will not match "donxart". |

 Table 3 Syntax Considerations With Repetition

| Syntax | Matches |
|----------|---|
| [a-c]def | Matches "adef", "bdef" and "cdef". Does not match anything else. |
| a?def | matches "adef" or "def". |
| + | matches the preceding character one or more times |
| a{2,3} | Matches 2 a's or 3 a's, "aa" or "aaa". |
| a{3,} | Matches "a" three or more times. |
| alb | Matches "a" or "b". (") means "or"). |
| a b?def | Matches "adef" or "bdef" or "def". |

| Table 4 | Syntax | Considerations | with | String | Concatenation |
|---------|--------|----------------|------|--------|---------------|
|---------|--------|----------------|------|--------|---------------|

| Syntax | Matches |
|----------|-------------------------------------|
| abc? | Matches "abc" or "ab". |
| (cat)?95 | Matches ``95″ or `` <i>cat</i> 95″. |

٠

| Other Rule Considerations | Any character equivalency class must be bracketed. (Example: [[:alpha:]]) |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| | The distribution rule set strongly parallels the UNIX grep command. |
| | Slave Query Engines always report on themselves. |
| | • An absolute rule represents a single machine assigned to a Slave Query Engine. |
| | Absolute rules apply before pattern matching rules. |
| | • Distribution rules may only be set on the Master Query Engine. Multiple Slave Query Engine rule designations are made from the Distribution Rules options. |
| | Case sensitivity is not an issue under Windows NT/2000 for machine names; therefore, rule assignment follows this convention as well. |
| Rule Precedence | Distribution Rules are performed in the following order of precedence. |
| | 1. Any part of a rule in parentheses |
| | 2. Repetition |
| | 3. Concatenation |
| | 4. Alternation (or) |
| Manually Adding an Absolute Rule | This section describes how to add an absolute rule manually. |
| • | To add an absolute rule |

Click the Add Distribution Rule button.

| Add Distribution | Rule | | × |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Rule Type | | | |
| Absolute | O Wildcard | C Computer Group | D |
| Expression Type | | | |
| Simple | C Regular | | |
| Allow failover to | the next rule if the s | elected QE is down? | |
| Rule | | | |
| | | | |
| | Browse For Gro | ups | |
| Available Query | Engines | Selected Query Engines | |
| ADELOSSA-TI | EST2 → | 4 | |
| | | | |
| | OK | Cancel He | P |

The Add Distribution Rule dialog appears.

Fig. 209 Add Distribution Rule Dialog – Absolute Rule

Note: By default, the **Absolute** option is already selected.

- 2 Enter the machine name in the **Rule** field.
- **3** From the **Available Query Engines** list, double-click the Slave Query Engine to which the rule will apply. The selected Slave engine moves from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

You can also select the Slave Query Engine and click the right arrow to move the Slave engine from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

- **4** Click **OK** to save the distribution rule. The distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.
- **5** When you are finished adding distribution rule(s), you will be prompted to save the distribution rule(s). Click **Yes** to save the rule(s).

Note: Once you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.

Manually Adding a Wildcard Rule You can add an absolute or wildcard (simple or regular) rule or add one using the Distribution Rule Wizard. When adding a wildcard rule, you can add a simple or a regular expression. The following two procedures describe how to add a simple and a regular expression wildcard rule manually.

► To add a simple expression

This procedure describes how to manually add a simple wildcard expression rule.

- 1 From the **Rule Type** box, select the **Wildcard** option. The **Expression Type** box becomes available.
- 2 Select the **Simple** option.

| Add Distribution R | ule | | X |
|----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|----|
| Rule Type | | | |
| C Absolute | Wildcard | C Computer Group | p |
| Expression Type | | | |
| Simple | C Regular | | |
| Allow failover to th | ne next rule if the se | lected QE is down? | |
| Rule | | | |
| | | | |
| | Browse For Grou | ips | |
| Available Query B | Engines (| Gelected Query Engines | |
| ADELOSSA-TE | ST2 | | |
| • | | • | |
| [| OK | Cancel He | ip |



- **3** Enter the simple expression in the **Rule** field. See "Expression Type" on page 202 for information about simple expressions.
- 4 From the Available Query Engines list, double-click the Slave Query Engine(s) to which the rule will apply. The selected Slave engine moves from the Available Query Engines list to the Selected Query Engines list.

You can also select the Slave Query Engine(s) and click the right arrow to move the Slave engine from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

- **5** Click **OK** to set the distribution rule. The distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.
- 6 After you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.

► To add a regular expression

This procedure describes how to manually add a regular wildcard expression rule.

1 Click the Add Distribution Rule button. The Add Distribution Rule dialog appears.

| d Distribution | Rule | | > |
|-------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Rule Type | | | |
| O Absolute | Wildcard | C Computer Group | |
| Expression Type | , | | |
| Simple | Regular | | |
| Allow failover to | the next rule if the : | selected QE is down? | |
| Rule | | | - |
| I | | | |
| | Browse For Gr | oups | |
| Available Query | Engines | Selected Query Engines | |
| ADELOSSA-T | EST2 | | |
| | > | | |
| | | | |
| | < | | |
| | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | Cancel Help | |
| | | | |

Fig. 211 Add Distribution Rule Dialog – Wilcard Rule/Regular Expression

- 2 Click **Wildcard** from the **Rule Type** box.
- 3 Click the **Regular** option in the **Expression Type** box.
- **4** Enter the regular expression in the **Rule** field. See "Regular Expressions" on page 202 for information about regular expressions.
- 5 From the Available Query Engines list, double-click the Slave Query Engine(s) to which the rule will apply. The selected Slave engine moves from the Available Query Engines list to the Selected Query Engines list.

You can also select the Slave Query Engine(s) and click the right arrow to move the Slave engine from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

- **6** Click **OK** to set the distribution rule. The distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.
- 7 After you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.

Manually Adding a To add a computer group rule

Computer Group Rule 1

Click the Add Distribution Rule button

| d Distribution | Rule | | 2 |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---|
| -Rule Type | | | |
| O Absolute | O Wildcard | Computer Group | |
| -Expression Type | | | |
| 💿 Simple | C Regular | | |
| Allow failover to | the next rule if the se | lected QE is down? | |
| - Kule | | | _ |
| | | | |
| | Browse For Grou | ips | |
| | | | |
| Available Query | Engines 9 | Selected Query Engines | _ |
| ADELOSSA-T | EST2 | | |
| | > | | |
| | | | |
| | < | | |
| | _ | 4 | |
| • | | | |
| | ОК | Cancel Help | |
| | | | - |

The Add Distribution Rule dialog appears

Fig. 212 Add Distribution Rule Dialog – Computer Group Rule

2 Enter the machine name in the **Rule** field.

| | 3 | From the Available Query Engines list, double-click the Slave Query Engine to which the rule will apply. The selected Slave engine moves from the Available Query Engines list to the Selected Query Engines list. |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--|
| | | You can also select the Slave Query Engine and click the right arrow to move the Slave engine from the Available Query Engines list to the Selected Query Engines list. |
| | 4 | Click OK to save the computer group distribution rule. The distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window. |
| | 5 | When you are finished adding distribution rule(s), you will be prompted to save the distribution rule(s). Click Yes to save the rule(s). |
| | | Once you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214. |
| Adding a Rule Using the Wizard | Thi reg usi | s section describes how to add an absolute rule, a simple and a jular expression wildcard rule, as well as a computer group rule ng the distribution rule wizard. |
| ► | То | add an absolute rule |
| | 1 | Click the Distribution Rule Wizard button. |

The **Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 1 of 3** dialog appears.



Fig. 213 Distribution Rule Assistant – Step 1 of 3 (Absolute rule)

2 Select **Absolute** and click **Next**.

 Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: Stribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3

 Image: String 2 of 3

 Image: Strip 2 of 3</

The Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3 dialog

Fig. 214 Distribution Rules Assistant – Step 2 of 3 (Absolute rule)

3 Enter the computer name in the **Enter the distribution rule** field.

4 Click Next. The Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 3 of 3 dialog appears.

| Distribution Rule Assistan | t - Step 3 of 3 | | X |
|----------------------------|--|---|---|
| 7 | Select the Slave Query Engi rule to apply. Available Query Engines ADRIANAW2K | ine(s) to which you want this Selected Query Engines | - |
| | Allow failover to the next rul group if the selected QE is o | > < le or to the default down? | |
| < | Back Finish | Cancel Help | |

Fig. 215 Distribution Rule Assistant – Step 3 of 3 (Absolute rule)

5 From the **Available Query Engines** list, double-click the Slave Query Engine to which you want to apply this distribution rule, or click the right arrow.

The selected Query Engine(s) move from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

6 After you have selected all the Slave Query Engines to which you want the rule to apply, click **Finish**.

The new distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.

- 7 After you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.
- To add a simple expression rule
 - **1** Click the **Distribution Rule Wizard** button.

The **Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 1 of 3** dialog appears.



Fig. 216 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 1 of 3 (Simple expression)

2 Select **Wildcard** and click **Next**.

The **Distribution Rules Assistant - Step 2 of 3** dialog appears.



Fig. 217 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 2 of 3 (Simple expression)

3 Enter the simple expression rule in the **Enter the distribution rule** field. By default, the **Simple** option is selected.

4 Click Next. The Distribution Rules Assistant - Step 3 of 3 dialog appears.

| Distribution Rule Assistant | : - Step 3 of 3 | | × |
|-----------------------------|--|---|---|
| Distribution Rule Assistant | select the Slave Query En rule to apply. Available Query Engines | igine(s) to which you want this Selected Query Engines | × |
| | Allow failover to the next r group if the selected QE is Back Finish | < | |

Fig. 218 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 3 of 3 (Simple expression)

5 From the **Available Query Engines** list, double-click the Slave Query Engine(s) to which you want to apply this distribution rule, or click the right arrow.

The selected Query Engine move from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

6 After you have selected all the Slave Query Engines to which you want the rule to apply, click **Finish**.

The new distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.

- 7 After you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.
- To add a regular expression rule
 - 1 Click the **Distribution Rule Wizard** button.

The **Distribution Rules Assistant - Step 1 of 3** dialog appears.



Fig. 219 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 1 of 3 (Simple expression)

2 Select Wildcard and click Next.

The **Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 2 of 3** dialog appears.



- Fig. 220 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 2 of 3 (Regular expression)
- **3** Click the **Regular** option, and enter the regular expression in the **Enter the distribution rule** field.
- 4 Click Next.

| Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 3 of 3 |
|--|
| Select the Slave Query Engine(s) to which you want this rule to apply. Available Query Engines ADRIANAW2K ADRIANAW2K ADRIANAW2CK ADRIANAW2 |
| |

The **Distribution Rule Assistant - Step 3 of 3** dialog appears.

Fig. 221 Distribution Rule Assistant Dialog-Step 3 of 3 (Regular expression)

5 From the **Available Query Engines** list, double-click the Slave Query Engine(s) to which you want to apply this distribution rule, or click the right arrow.

The selected Query Engine move from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Selected Query Engines** list.

6 After you have selected all the Slave Query Engines to which you want the rule to apply, click **Finish**.

The new distribution rule appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.

7 After you have added or altered a distribution rule, you must save the rule and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See the following section, "Saving Distribution Rule Changes".

Saving Distribution Rule Changes

No matter which method you used to add a distribution rule, the rule(s) you added (or altered) are not saved until you exit the righthand component of the bv-Config utility. This section describes how to save your distribution rule changes.

To save a distribution rule

1 Exit the right-hand component of the bv-Config utility by clicking the **Up One Level** toolbar button on the bv-Config utility toolbar.

2 The **bv-Config** message prompts you to save any distribution rule(s) added or altered. Click **Yes**.



The Synchronizing Master Query Engine(s) dialog appears.

| ************************************* | (s) <u>X</u> |
|--|--------------|
| ✓\\ADRIANAW2K | Abort |
| | Synchronize |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | Select All |
| | Clear All |
| | |
| | |

Fig. 222 Synchronizing Master Query Engines Dialog

3 Click **Synchronize** to update the Master Query Engine with the distribution rule change(s).

If synchronization is successful, the **Synchronizing Master Query Engine(s)** dialog appears "synchronized" to the right of the Master Query Engine(s).

4 Click Close.

The right-hand component of the bv-Config utility displays the options for the Query Engine for which you added or altered the distribution rule(s).

Removing a Rule

You may decide that you no longer want to apply an existing distribution rule. Once a rule is removed, the machines to which the rule applied will be distributed to the default Query Engines in a round-robin order.

To remove a distribution rule

- 1 From the bv-Config window, select the machine running the Master Query Engine that contains the distribution rule you want to remove.
- 2 Double-click the **Distribution Rules** option. The list of distribution rules currently set for the Query Engine appears in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.
- **3** Select the distribution rule you want to remove, and click the delete button.

The distribution rule is removed from the list.

4 After you have deleted a distribution rule, you must save the changes and synchronize them with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.

Setting the Default Group

If you have set up specific distribution rules to include or exclude machines on which a Slave Query Engine reports, you may also want to set up default Slave Query Engines to report on those machines that have not been specifically set to be reported on by a distribution rule.

To set the default group

1 Click the **Default Group** button on the toolbar.

| Default Group | × |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Available Query Engines ADRIANAW2K | Selected Query Engines |
| | > |
| | < |
| | |
| OK | Cancel Help |

The **Default Group** dialog appears.

Fig. 223 Default Group Dialog

2 From the **Available Query Engines** list, select the Slave Query Engine you want to include in the default group, and click the right arrow button, or double-click the Slave.

The selected Slave moves from the **Available Query Engines** list to the **Select Query Engines** list.

- 3 Click **OK** to close the **Default Group** dialog.
- 4 After you have set the default Slave Query Engine(s), you must save the Default Group and synchronize it with the ECS for the rule changes to take effect. See "Saving Distribution Rule Changes" on page 214.

Viewing Rule Results After you have defined distribution rules and set the default group, you can view the results of the rules and your default group selection. These results will show you which Query Engine will collect network data from which machine in its domain. The distribution rule results may be viewed at any time.

• To view distribution rule results

1 From the bv-Config utility, select the machine running the Query Engine for which you want to view distribution rule results.
- 2 Double-click the **Distribution Rules** option. The list of distribution rules displays in the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.
- **3** Click the **View Distribution Rules Results** button on the toolbar.

The **Distribution Rules Results** dialog appears.

| tt | Distribution Rules R | esults | | <u>_ ×</u> |
|----|--|--------|----|--------------|
| | ADRIANAW2K ADRIANAW2K ADRIANAW2K 19ETHER 19FLPSANCHEZ:XP 19IMGPC 20ETHER 22ETHER 22FOURLEAF 23FUREAF 23FURLEAF 23FURLEAF 24ETHER | esults | | |
| | 24-FOURLEAF 25ETHER 2NDFLPLASMA | | | • |
| | | | ОК | Help |

Fig. 224 Distribution Rules Results Dialog

4 Use the horizontal and vertical scroll bars to view the Query Engines and machines assigned to them.

The machine names appearing in the header are the machines where Slave Query Engines are installed. The Machines that appear beneath them are the machines on which those Query Engines report.

Note: A Slave Query Engine will always report on itself, regardless of any distribution rule.

5 After viewing the results, click **OK** to close the dialog.

Site Based Distribution Rules

The Site Based Distribution Rule feature allows you to generate IP Computer Groups based on Active Directory sites. Once that information is attained, you can generate the site based Distribution Rules. Using the Computer Groups generated from Active Directory, you can generate Distribution Rules and assign Query Engines based on their IP address into the correct rule. By using Active Directory, you can quickly generate Computer Groups and Distribution Rules to accurately fit your specific network topology.

• To generate IP Groups based on Active Directory sites

- **1** From bv-Config, right-click the domain that you want to apply the rule to.
- 2 From the drop-down menu, select **Manage Computer Groups**. The **Query Computer Groups** dialog appears.
- 3 Click the **Generate IP Group(s)...** button.
- 4 The **Generate Groups from Sites** dialog appears.

8: Configuring Query Engine Settings 217

| Generate Groups From Sites | <u>?</u> × |
|-------------------------------------|------------|
| Target Domain Controller | 1 |
| Pueblo.easterncolorado.colorado.net | Generate |
| Credential | |
| Generated IP Groups | 1 |
| Group Name Group Status | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | ОК |
| | Cancel |
| Rename Delete | Help |

Fig. 225 Generate Groups From Sites dialog

5 Identify the Target Domain Controller and click **Generate**.

Once you have generated the IP groups based on the Active Directory site, use the **Generate Site Based Distribution Rules** dialog to generate a computer group or distribution rule based on the Active Directory site(s).

| Generate Site Based Distribution Rules | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Rule Type C Absolute C Wildcard C Computer Group | | | | |
| Allow failover to the next rule if the selected QE is down? | | | | |
| Generate Rules | | | | |
| Generated Rules | | | | |
| Rule Slave Query Engine | | | | |
| Remove | | | | |
| OK Cancel Help | | | | |



| Promoting and Demoting Query Engines | You can promote a Slave Query Engine to a Master Query Engine or demote a Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine. | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| Promoting a Slave Query Engine | If you prefer, you can make a Slave Query Engine a Master Query Engine without going through the Query Engine installation. Perform the following steps: | | |
| ► | To promote a slave to a master | | |
| | From the bv-Config utility, select the machine running the Slave Query Engine you want to promote to a Master. | | |
| | 2 From the right-hand component of the bv-Config window, select Promote to a Master Query Engine. | | |
| | The bv-Config utility will prompt you to make sure you want to promote the Slave with the bv-Config message. | | |
| | Are you sure you want to promote the Query Engine? | | |
| | 3 Click Yes . The bv-Config utility will promote the Slave Query Engine to a Master Query Engine. | | |
| Demoting a Master Query Engine | If you prefer, you can make a Master Query Engine a Slave Query Engine without going through the Query Engine installation. Perform the following steps. | | |
| ► | To demote a master to a slave | | |
| | From the bv-Config utility, select the machine running the Master Query Engine you want to demote to a Slave Query Engine. | | |
| | 2 From the right-hand component of the bv-Config window, select Demote to a Slave Query Engine . | | |
| | The bv-Config utility will prompt you to verify that you want to demote the Master by displaying the bv-Config message. | | |
| | by-Config Are you sure you want to demote the Query Engine? | | |
| | | | |

3 Click **Yes**. The bv-Config utility will demote the Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine.

Demoting a Master Query Engine

Using Query-Related Features

In This Chapter

9

| er | Understanding Oueries | |
|----|-----------------------|-----|
| | Creating a Query | |
| | Running Queries | |
| | Dialog Book | 235 |
| | Using ActiveAdmin | 237 |
| | Baselining | |
| | Exporting | |
| | Creating Task Lists | |
| | Creating Schedules | 253 |
| | Charting | 259 |
| | | |

| Understanding Queries | A query is a question that you define based on a specific set of criteria, and submit to the Information Server to receive specific information about resource objects in your environment. | | |
|--------------------------|---|--|--|
| | By querying your environment using bv-Control for Windows, administrators can use the Query Builder process to create reports that are specific to the data sources and fields of the query. The query can be customized to report on specific information in your organization. The query results can then be saved for analysis and planning of your environment at a later time. | | |
| | You must have processing rights to create and modify queries. Only BindView Administrators can assign user rights for query processing. | | |
| | For information on assigning query rights, see the <i>BindView RMS</i> Console and Information Server User Guide, or online Help. | | |
| | You must also have at least one credential database assigned to you to be able to successfully query resource objects. You can only query the resource objects whose credentials are valid in the credential database that is assigned to you. | | |
| Query Components | The following components allow you to create a query: | | |
| | Data Source - Fields that represent a resource object or a collection of resource objects that are specific to bv-Control for Windows. | | |
| | Field Specification - Allows you to select the fields to be reported on by the query. | | |
| | • Filter Specification - Allows you to define values for certain fields in the guary results. These fields are used to select specific | | |
| | records, and to more narrowly define the information that the query gathers. | | |
| | records, and to more narrowly define the information that the query gathers. Filters are not required in query definitions. | | |
| | records, and to more narrowly define the information that the query gathers. Filters are not required in query definitions. Sort Specification - Allows you to determine the order in which fields and values appear in the query results. | | |
| | records, and to more narrowly define the information that the query gathers. Filters are not required in query definitions. Sort Specification - Allows you to determine the order in which fields and values appear in the query results. Sorts are not required in query definitions. | | |
| | records, and to more narrowly define the information that the query gathers. Filters are not required in query definitions. Sort Specification - Allows you to determine the order in which fields and values appear in the query results. Sorts are not required in query definitions. Scope Specification - Allows you to define which resource objects are examined during query processing. | | |

| Creating a Query | The first step in defining a query is to determine the information about your environment that you want to gather. When defining a query, use the Select Data Source dialog and the Query Builde dialog to specify the information that you want and the manner in which you want it collected. These dialogs can be accessed from th New Query icon on the BindView product toolbar. | | |
|----------------------------|---|--|--|
| | For additional information about the Select Data Source and Query Builder dialogs, see the <i>BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . | | |
| Selecting a Data Source | You must select a data source for the query definition. A data source contains fields that represent a resource object, or a collection of resource objects. | | |

- To select a data source
 - **1** Click the **New Query 1** icon on the product toolbar.

The **Select Data Source** dialog appears.

| Select Data Source | <u>? ×</u> |
|---|----------------|
| Show Advanced Data Sources | ОК |
| Image: System of the system | Cancel Help |
| Vulnerability and Configuration Management solution for Windows | |

Fig. 227 Select Data Source Dialog

2 Select a data source and click **OK**.

The Query Builder dialog appears (Fig. 228 on page 224).

Adding Fields To add fields to the query definition, use the Field Specification tab on the Query Builder dialog. A query definition must contain at least one field.

The added fields define the type of information received about the resource objects when the query is run.

To add a field

1 Select a field in the **Available Fields** list.

You can view a description of the selected field by clicking the **Field Info** button.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query | × |
|---|---------------|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope | |
| Filter Field Names: Apply | |
| Available Fields | Field Info |
| 🗆 🔄 Machines | |
| 🕀 🧰 Account Lockout Properties | |
| 🗄 🧰 Account Properties | |
| 🕀 🧰 Administrative Alerts Analysis | |
| 🕀 🧰 All Fields | |
| 🕀 🧰 Audit Configuration | |
| 🕀 🧰 Custom | |
| E DHCP Server Configuration | Add |
| 🕀 🦲 Disk Space Analysis | 800 |
| Editable Fields (ActiveAdmin) | |
| FSMD Roles | |
| Selected Fields | Bernova |
| Domain Work group Name | |
| Machine Name (Pre-Windows 2000) | |
| | Remove All |
| | |
| | Descriptor |
| | Descriptor |
| | |
| | Field Details |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| OK Cancel | Help |
| | |



2 Click Add.

Fields can also be added by double-clicking them, or by dragging them to the **Selected Fields** list.

The field appears in the **Selected Fields** list.

Fields appear in the dataset in the order they appear in the **Selected Fields** list. The field order can be rearranged by dragging fields.

Some fields, such as ranges, require a descriptor value. A dialog (Fig. 229) for that field appears after you click **Add**.

| Oescriptor Value | C Prompt Value | |
|------------------|-------------------|----|
| | | Ca |
| | | F |
| Description | | |
| Descriptor: | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | Change Descriptor | |

Fig. 229 Descriptor Field Dialog - Prompt Value

After you enter the value and click **OK**, the field with its value appears in the **Selected Fields** area.

You can guickly search for a specific field in the selected data source Filtering the Available Fields List by creating a filter for the **Available Fields** list. To filter the Available Fields list ► 1 Enter the string in the **Filter Field Names** text box (Fig. 228 on page 224). 2 Click **Apply**. The fields that contain the string appear in the **Available** Fields list (Fig. 228). Clearing the Filter Field Names box and clicking Apply repopulates the Available Fields list with all the fields contained in the data source. **Adding Filters** You can add filters to the query definition to reduce the number of resource object records returned in the dataset. Filters consist of one or more filter terms. A filter term is a value, or group of values, selected by the user that defines the record types that are returned in the dataset. Users must supply all filter term values before the Information Server can process a query that contains a filter. Users supply filter term values either immediately after adding a filter term to a query definition, or each time the query is run. If the user who creates the query definition includes a prompt user command, the filter term value must be defined by the user who runs the query. When the Information Server processes a query, it applies the filter to each record that is gathered for the selected resource objects. Only the records that match the filter are included in the dataset. To add a filter term 1 Select the Filter Specification tab on the Query Builder dialog. 9: Using Query-Related Features 225 2

| eld Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope | |
|---|------------|
| Filter Field Names: Apply | |
| Available Fields | Field Info |
| 🕀 🧰 FSMO Roles | |
| E File Info | |
| Hardware Analysis | |
| E Log Analysis | |
| Elig Analysis | |
| | Add |
| Dperating System | |
| | |
| Operator Expression | Modify |
| | |
| | Remove |
| | |
| | Hemove All |
| | Descriptor |
| | |
| | AND/OR |
| | |
| Add [] Remove [] | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

Fig. 230 Query Builder Dialog - Filter Specification Tab

3 Select a field for which you want to define a filter term and click **Add**.

The **Filter Term Definition** dialog appears.

| Filter Term Definition | | | | × |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------|
| Specific Value | C Special Value | C Another Field | C Prompt User | ОК |
| Operating System | | | | Cancel |
| Equal To | • | | | Help |
| Specify a value: | | | | |
| | | | | |
| Case sensitive | | | | |

Fig. 231 Specific Value Filter Term Definition

The **Filter Term Definition** dialog allows you to further filter the selected field.

- 4 Select a filter option.
- **5** Select an operator from the drop-down list.
- **6** Enter a specific value for the operator in the **Specify a value** box.
- 7 Click OK.
- 226 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

| | The filter term appears in the Expression list on the Filter Specification tab (Fig. 230 on page 226). |
|---|---|
| Grouping Filter Terms | You can group two or more filter terms that you want to function as a single unit by using the Add parentheses buttons on the Filter Specification tab to group filter terms. The Remove parentheses buttons ungroup the filter terms. |
| <i>Modifying and Removing Filter Term Definitions</i> | To modify the filter term, select the filter term and click Modify . The Modify button invokes the Filter Term Definition dialog (Fig. 231 on page 226). To remove a filter term, select the filter term and click Remove . |
| Filtering Field Names | As on the Field Specification tab, you can quickly search for a specific field in the selected data source by creating a filter for the Filter Field Names. See "Filtering the Available Fields List" on page 225. |

Adding Sorts Sorts determine the order in which sort fields and sort field values appear in the dataset. You can only apply sorts to fields that you added to the query definition.

To add a sort

1 Select the **Sort Specification** tab on the **Query Builder** dialog.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query | × |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Scope | |
| Available Fields Accounts: Is Guest Account Disabled? Account Policy <form></form> | Field Info |
| | Add |
| Colored Fields | |
| Selected Fields Domain/Workgroup Name Machine Name (Pre-Windows 2000) Account Expiration Date | Toggle Sort Remove Remove All |
| ┌ Select Duplicate Key Options | |
| Allow Records with Duplicate Key | |
| C Only Allow Records with Duplicate Key | |
| Suppress Records with Duplicate Key | |
| | |
| OK Cancel | Help |



2 Select a field and click Add.

| | The selected sort fields appear in the Selected Fields list (Fig. 232 on page 227). |
|---|--|
| | The fields and field values appear in the dataset according to the sort specification. |
| | 3 Select a duplicate key option. |
| | Allow Records with Duplicate Key - Includes all records regardless of key duplication. |
| | Only Allow Records with Duplicate Key - Includes only those records that have duplicate keys. |
| | Suppress Records with Duplicate Key - Includes only the first record of a key. |
| <i>Modifying and Removing Sort Fields</i> | To modify the sort direction of the fields, select a field and click Toggle Sort to toggle between an A to Z or Z to A sort for the values returned for the sort field. You also can change the sort direction by double-clicking the sort field. |
| | To modify the sort order of the fields, select a field and drag it to the desired position. |
| | To remove a field, select a field and click Remove . The field is removed from the Selected Fields list. |
| Adding Scopes | A scope narrows the range of resource objects that are queried. A scope consists of user-selected scope items. A scope item is a single resource object or a container that holds several resource objects. |
| | Since the Information Server only queries the resource objects indicated by the scope, you can use scopes to significantly reduce the time it takes to retrieve a dataset. |
| ► | To add a Scope |
| | 1 Select the Scope tab on the Query Builder dialog (Fig. 233). |
| | 2 Select a scope in the Available Items list. |
| | |

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query Field Specification Filter Specification Scope | × |
|--|---|
| Available Item(s) | |
| Active Directory Active Directory Graphicanada.qnt-america.lab Builtin Graphicanada.qnt-america.lab Builtin Graphicanada.qnt-america.lab Demain Controllers Demain Controllers | |
| Users 🗾 | |
| Add Scope Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Selected Item(s) | |
| Remove Scope Save as Named Scope Additional Settings | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 233 Query Builder Dialog - Scope Tab

3 Click Add Scope.

The scope appears in the **Selected Item(s)** list.

If the selected data source allows you to specify advanced scope filters, the **Additional Settings** dialog appears.

Using Dynamic Indexing Dynamic indexing reduces the display time of scope items on the **Scope** tab of the **Query Builder** dialog. Dynamic indexing alphabetically categorizes large numbers of nodes, or scope items, into several folders.

Dynamic index folders have a unique icon iand are labeled with the name of the first and last scope item in the folder. By default, dynamic indexing is enabled for all users. Each user has their own default dynamic indexing settings.

- To disable or modify your default dynamic index settings
 - **1** Click **Configure Dynamic Indexing** on the **Scope** tab.

The **Configure Dynamic Indexing** dialog appears.

| Configure Dynamic Indexing | × |
|----------------------------|--------|
| Enable Dynamic Indexing | OK |
| Settings | Cancel |
| Nodes Per Folder 1000 | Help |
| | |

Fig. 234 Configure Dynamic Indexing Dialog

- **2** Select to enable or disable dynamic indexing. If you disable dynamic indexing, proceed to step 4.
- **3** Enter the number of folders and nodes that you want to be displayed in the **Available Items** list.
- 4 Click **OK**.
- **Saving Named Scopes** A named scope is a group of saved scope items stored on the Information Server. All users of the Information Server can access any named scope saved on it.
 - **1** Select the **Scope** tab on the **Query Builder** dialog (Fig. 233 on page 229).
 - 2 Select the item in the **Selected Item(s)** list.
 - 3 Click Save as Named Scope.

The Named Scope dialog appears.

| Named Scope | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|
| Enter a name for thi | is named scope: | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| р | | | | | |
| ОК | Cancel | | | | |

Fig. 235 Named Scope Dialog

- **4** Enter the name for the scope.
- 5 Click OK.

The named scope is saved on the Information Server that you are currently using and can be reused for other queries based on the data source.

| Adding Named Scopes to Query Definitions | You can add a named scope to any query definition that contains the same data source as the one associated with the named scope. When you add a named scope, you link the named scope to the query definition. | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| ► | То | add a named scope to a query definition | | | | |
| | 1 | Expand the Named Scopes folder on the Scope tab on the Query Builder dialog (Fig. 233 on page 229). | | | | |
| | | All named scopes stored on the Information Server for the selected data source appear. | | | | |
| | 2 | Select the named scope. | | | | |
| | 3 | Click Add Scope. | | | | |
| | | The scope is now listed in the Selected Item(s) field. | | | | |
| | 4 | Click OK . | | | | |
| | | The named scope is linked to the query definition. | | | | |
| | No sco aut sco | Note: If you save a query definition that contains a link to a named scope, any modifications made to the named scope are automatically applied to query definitions that use the named scope. | | | | |
| Removing a Scope | To is r | remove a scope, select the scope and click Remove . The scope removed from the Selected Fields list. | | | | |
| Saving a Query Definition | A query definition is referred to as the Query Binder by the BindView RMS Console. By default, the Query Binder file is saved in the My Items folder, a subfolder found in the Risk Assessment and Control subfolder of the BindView Risk Management container. If you want to save your Query Binder in a different location, you can browse for the location and select it. The Query Options dialog is used to save the Query Binder. | | | | | |
| ► | То | save a Query Binder | | | | |
| | 1 | Click OK on the Query Builder dialog. | | | | |
| | | The Query Options dialog appears. | | | | |

| Query Options | | × |
|--------------------------|----------------|--------|
| View As | | Bun |
| Grid | | Modify |
| C Chart | Chart Settings | Save |
| U Report | | Help |
| | | Cancel |

Fig. 236 Query Options Dialog

2 Click Save.

| Save Query | | × |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Browse in Folder: | My Items | |
| 📒 my query | | 1 |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| Selection Name: | | |
| Save Type: | Query Binder and Shortcut allowed | _ |
| | OK Cancel Help | |

The **Save Query** dialog appears.

Fig. 237 Save Query Dialog

- **3** Enter the name of the Query Binder in the **Selection Name** field.
- 4 Click OK.

The **Query Options** dialog reappears (Fig. 238), and you are now ready to run the query.

Running Queries

You can run a query from the **Query Options** dialog or the **Query Binder** shortcut menu. When you run a query, the Information Server polls the resource objects you selected in the query definition and returns this information in a dataset.

Datasets can be displayed in the following view types:

• **Grid** - Displays the dataset in a spreadsheet-style interface. Grid columns represent the fields included in the query definition, the grid rows represent the resource object records, and grid cells contain the gathered resource object attributes.

If a record length exceeds the displayed column width, a red arrow appears in the record cell. Red arrows invoke pop-up windows when you place the cursor on them.

After running a query, always check for messages that have been returned with the query results. Click the **Messages** button at the lower right-side of the report to view messages.

- **Chart** Displays the results of a query in a graphic format. Charts are created and modified using the Chart Builder Wizard. The wizard guides you through the process of building a custom chart for your query. During the building process, you select the type of chart (column, pie, or histogram) you want to build, and how you want the chart to be labeled.
- **Report** Allows you to create a variety of customized reports for your query results, and to print a report of the data results from your query. The Console is installed with default settings. However, you can customize the default settings by using the

Global Report Style Settings item in the BindView RMS Configuration folder.

For more information about query results settings, see the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

- **•** To run a query from the Query Options dialog
 - 1 Click **OK** on the **Query Builder** dialog.

The **Query Options** dialog appears.

| Query Options | | × |
|---------------|----------------|--------|
| View As | | Run |
| Grid | | Modify |
| C Chart | Chart Settings | Save |
| C Report | | Help |
| | | Cancel |
| | | |

Fig. 238 Query Options Dialog

- 2 Select the view type in the **View As** area.
- 3 Click Run.

The dataset appears.

| 🔲 Ur | ntitled by-Control for Windows | Machines Query (17) | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Grid | Edit View Help | | | | | |
|] 🚉 | 😟 🥩 🗞 🖉 🛅 👷 🛄 🏟 🗞 🗛 😕 📭 | | | | | |
| | Domain/Workgroup Name | Machine Name (Pre-Windows 2000) | | | | |
| 1 | QNT-CANADA | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | | | | |
| 2 | QNT-CANADA | LNT-ACTON-STD | | | | |
| 3 | QNT-CANADA | VNT-AJAX-STD | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | Record 1 of 3 Messages: 0 | | | | | |

Fig. 239 Query Results in Grid View Type

• To run a query from an existing query binder

- 1 Double-click **Risk Assessment and Control** in the **BindView RMS** container.
- 2 Click **My Items** to view the existing saved queries.
- **3** Select the query you want to run.

| 🚡 BindView - [BindView RMS\Risk Ass | essme | ent and Control\My | ltems | | | |
|---|----------|----------------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
|] 🚡 ⊆onsole <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp | | | | | | _ 7 × |
| Action ⊻iew | ∦ ⊑ | a 🗙 😭 🛃 | 8 | 📰 🐮 🐌 😰 | 4 3 😚 | |
| Tree | My It | ems Content of "\My | ltems\' | | | |
| BindView RMS | Name | 9 | | Туре | Date | Version |
| 🗄 🗟 Risk Assessment and Control | 1 🗐 y | V OLIERV | | Ouery Binder | 5/10/2004 12:43 | 1 |
| All User Items | | Run | | And View As Ghu | _ | |
| | | View | - i | And Preview | | |
| | | Settings | • | And Print | | |
| my query | | Manage | • | And Export | | |
| Exported Files | | Schedule | _ | And SaveTo DSC | | |
| | | Create Shortcut | | | | |
| Windows | | Export Definition To | | | | |
| Configuration | | Cut | | | | |
| | | Сору | | | | |
| | | Delete | | | | |
| | | Rename | | | | |
| | | Rerresh | | | | |
| | \ No - | Properties | | | | |
| | <u>`</u> | Help | | | | |

Fig. 240 Accessing the Query Binder

4 Select **Run>And View As Grid** from the shortcut menus to run the query.

The query results appear in a grid (Fig. 239).

| Rerunning Queries from the Grid Toolbar | The Rerun Query the query that was us The resulting dataset | icon on the grid toolbar allows you to rerun ed to create the dataset displayed on the grid. is automatically displayed as a grid. |
|---|--|---|
| | Saving datasets in a q command removes th because the correspon binder. | uery binder using either the Save or Save As e query task from the Task Status dialog nding dataset has been moved into a query |
| Monitoring the Status of Processed Queries | Using the Task Statu your query tasks that You can access the Ta | s dialog, you can quickly monitor and manage are processed by the Information Server. sk Status dialog by clicking the Task Status |
| | icon [] on the prod on a taskpad. | uct toolbar, or the View Task Status option |

| Task Sl | atus - ADELOSSA-TEST2 | | | |
|---------|--|--------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Actions | | | | |
| Job Ide | Name | Туре | Start 🔽 | End 🔺 |
| 01827 | my query | Query | 5/10/2004 12:53:07 PM | |
| 0 1826 | Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines | Query | 5/10/2004 12:46:54 PM | 5/10/2004 12:47:06 |
| 0 1824 | Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines | Query | 5/10/2004 12:46:20 PM | 5/10/2004 12:46:24 🖵 |
| 1 | | | | • |
| 🕘 Error | 📕 Partially Successful 🛛 🔵 Successful | 🔵 Incomplete | 🔷 Waiting 🛛 🔵 Runnii | ng |

Fig. 241 Task Status Dialog

You can monitor query tasks by observing their associated status icons. You can manage query tasks using the **Query Task** shortcut menu commands:

- View Displays the dataset gathered for the query as a grid.
- Halt Stops query processing and displays the gathered dataset as a grid.
- **Delete** Stops query processing and deletes the gathered dataset.
- **Save** or **Save As** Links the dataset to the query binder containing the query definition for the processed query.

Dialog Book

A Dialog Book provides an alternative view of the data available from certain data sources. You can access the Dialog Book using one of the following methods:

- Double-click a record in a grid
- Right-click an object in the Details pane
- Right-click an object in the Console tree

The Dialog Book obtained from a dataset may contain some of the available fields in the data source even if the fields were not included in the query. The fields are organized by tabs in the Dialog Book.

The data in the grid is displayed one row at a time. You use the arrow buttons at the bottom of the dialog to move from one record to another.

- To access the Dialog Book from a dataset grid
 - **1** Run a query.
 - **2** On the query results grid, double-click a record.

The **Dialog Book** dialog appears.

| ADELOSSA-TEST2 | × |
|--|----------|
| TCPIP Configurable TCPIP Current Transports DHCP | UPS |
| Disk Space General Shares Environment | Startup |
| Properties Log Configuration Recovery Options Alert Recipients | Services |
| Machine Properties Machine Name: ADELOSSA-TEST2 Description: [None] OS Version: 5.0 | |
| Service Pack Revision: Service Pack 4 OS Install Date: 12/19/2002 12:12:53 PM Is PDC? No File Systems Installe | |
| IS BDC? No | Þ |
| Is Workstation? Yes | |
| Record 1 of 3 | Help |

Fig. 242 Dialog Book Dialog

3 Select the appropriate tab to access information about the record you selected.

Note: Because data is regenerated when you double-click on a record, the information in the Dialog Book may be different than the data in the grid.

| Using ActiveAdmin | The ActiveAdmin ${\ensuremath{\mathbb S}}$ feature is used to manage the following items from the Console: |
|------------------------------|---|
| | Resource objectsHistorical datasetsSession logs |
| | Users with access rights can manage resource objects by deleting them, or by changing their attributes. When you use ActiveAdmin to manage resource objects, the actual resource objects in your enterprise are deleted or changed. ActiveAdmin does not change resource object records in historical datasets. |
| | BindView Administrators can manage historical datasets and session logs by deleting them from the Information Server. |
| | You must have an ActiveAdmin license and processing rights to use ActiveAdmin. For additional information on ActiveAdmin user rights, see the <i>BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . |
| Deleting Resource Objects | You can delete any resource object that is represented by a data source that supports the ActiveAdmin delete feature. You access the ActiveAdmin delete feature from the Delete command on the shortcut menu of a grid row. When you use the Delete command, the Information Server deletes the resource object represented in the grid row. |
| | Warning: The ActiveAdmin Delete feature permanently deletes resource objects from your enterprise. |
| ► | To delete a resource object |
| | Run a query created from a data source that supports the ActiveAdmin delete feature and view the dataset as a grid. |
| | Make sure that the data source selected for the query represents the resource objects you want to delete. |

For information on running a query, see "Running Queries" on page 232.

The query results appear in a grid (Fig. 243).

| i U | ntitle | d by-Control for Wi | ndows Machines Quer | y (18) | | | | | _ 0 |
|------|--------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----|-------------|---------|---|---------------------------------|
| Grid | Edit | View Help | | | | | | | |
|] 🗟 | ٩ | 😽 🛷 1 🛅 🚼 | 🔟 🕸 🗞 🗛 🧐 | | | | | | |
| | D N |)omain/Workgroup Jame | Machine Name (Pre-Windows 2000) | Auditing: Enabled? | Se | curity Log: | Maxim | num Size (KB) | User Rights <for< th=""></for<> |
| 1 | G | NT-CANADA | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | View | | | 512 | | [Form] |
| 2 | G | NT-CANADA | LNT-ACTON-STD | Edit | | | 131,07: | 2 | [Form] |
| 3 | G | NT-CANADA | VNT-AJAX-STD | | _ | | 16,384 | l . | [Form] |
| • | | | | Row | | ActiveAdm | iin ▶ | Delete account Reset Secure Cl Delete | and child objects nannel |
| | R | ecord 1 of 3 | Messages: O | | | | | | |



- **2** Select the record to be deleted.
- **3** Right-click the associated row number and select **Delete** from the shortcut menu.

The **Delete Action** confirmation dialog appears.

4 Click OK.

The session log appears after the Information Server processes the ActiveAdmin task.

Changing Resource Object Attributes

You can change any resource object attribute collected for a field
 that supports the ActiveAdmin change feature. Fields that support
 the ActiveAdmin change feature are editable fields and are

identified by the **ActiveAdmin** icon \mathbf{i} on the **Query Builder** dialog.

You can access the ActiveAdmin change feature from the **Edit** command on the shortcut menu of a grid cell. The **Edit** command is only available on the cells in an editable field column.

The **Edit** command invokes an ActiveAdmin change dialog. When you use this dialog to change the value appearing in the grid cell, the Information Server changes the associated resource object attribute. You can change several values in a grid column at once, or change the values individually.

Warning: The ActiveAdmin **Edit** feature permanently changes resource objects in your Enterprise.

To change resource object attributes

1 Run a query created from a data source containing the editable fields that represent the resource objects you want to modify and view the dataset as a grid.

For detailed information on running queries, see "Running Queries" on page 232.

The grid automatically appears after the query has run.

| 🔲 Unti | tled by-Control for Wi | ndows Machines Quer | y (18) | | | | - D × |
|--------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|---------------|
| Grid E | dit View Help | | | | | | |
|] 🗟 🧃 | 🍯 😽 🦓 1 🛅 🚼 | 🛄 🗯 🎭 🗛 🧐 | | | | | |
| | Domain/Workgroup Name | Machine Name (Pre-Windows 2000) | Auditing: Enabled? | Security L (KB) | .og: Maximum Size | User Rights⊸ | <form></form> |
| 1 | QNT-CANADA | ADELOSSA-TEST2 | No | View | 512 | [Form] | Þ |
| 2 | QNT-CANADA | LNT-ACTON-STD | Yes | Edit | 131,072 | [Form] | Þ |
| 3 | QNT-CANADA | VNT-AJAX-STD | Yes — | <u></u> | 16,384 | [Form] | Þ |
| - | | | | Row 🕨 | | | |
| H= | | | _ | | | | |
| | Record 1 of 3 | Messages: O | | | | | |

Fig. 244 Grid with ActiveAdmin Edit

- **2** Select the resource object you want to modify.
- **3** Right-click the value and select **Edit** from the shortcut menu.

The ActiveAdmin Change dialog appears.

4 Edit the value and click **OK**.

The **Change Action** confirmation message appears.

5 Click OK.

If you have access rights, the session log appears after the Information Server processes the ActiveAdmin task.

Deleting Historical Datasets and Session Logs

BindView Administrators can delete any historical dataset or session log stored on the Information Server, even those created by other users. BindView Administrators use grids created from **Historical Dataset** queries to delete historical datasets or session logs.

To delete a historical dataset or session log

1 Run a **Historical Dataset** query and select to view the dataset as a grid.

All the historical datasets and session logs stored on the Information Server appear in a grid.

| 🔳 Lis | t of Historical Datasets | | x |
|-------|---|--------------------------|---|
| Grid | Edit View Help | | |
|] 🚉 | 🎯 🗞 🔗 🛅 📰 🛄 😂 🐞 🗛 🧐 🗖 | | |
| | Title | Username | |
| 1 | Available Data Source and Field Details | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 2 | Change Session Log : Untitled by-Control for Windows Machin 🖪 | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 3 | Change Session Log : Untitled by-Control for Windows Machin 🖪 | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| | ActiveAdmin In Delete Mintitled by-Control for Windows Volume | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 5 | Detailed Oser Documentation | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 6 | my query | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 7 | Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 8 | Untitled bv-Control for Windows Machines Query (1) | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 9 | Untitled bv-Control for Windows Machines Query (1) | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 10 | Untitled bv-Control for Windows Machines Query (10) | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 11 | Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query (11) | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | |
| 12 | Untitled bv-Control for Windows Machines Query (12) | QNT-CANADA/Administrator | Ŧ |
| • | | | |
| | Record 4 of 38 Messages: 0 | | |

Fig. 245 Historical Dataset Delete

- **2** Select the historical dataset or session log to be deleted.
- **3** Right-click the row number and select **Delete** from the shortcut menu.

The **Delete Action confirmation** dialog appears.

4 Click OK.

If you have access rights, a session log appears after the Information Server processes the ActiveAdmin task.

Baselining

Baselining compares the records of two historical datasets linked to a query binder and produces a delta dataset that you can export or display as a grid or report. Delta datasets are used to view exceptions and monitor changes in your resource objects over time.

Baselining can help you perform risk management by allowing you to view exceptions and monitor changes in your environment. You can then analyze the differences to determine how your environment has changed between query executions.

You must have at least two historical datasets linked to a query binder to use the baseline feature. These historical datasets must be created from a query definition that contains a data source that supports baselining.

When you baseline two historical datasets, the records in the newer dataset are compared against the records in the older dataset. The older dataset is called the baselined dataset, and the newer dataset is called the compared dataset.

When you run a baseline, the Information Server creates a delta dataset that contains all baselined and compared dataset records that match the user-selected record status options.

Each record status has an associated icon.

Table 5 Baseline Record Status Types



Creating a Delta Dataset

When you create a delta dataset, it is automatically displayed as a grid. Although you cannot save delta datasets, you can use the grid functionality to print a report or export the delta dataset.

To create a delta dataset

1 Right-click the query binder file in the **BindView RMS>My Items** folder and select **Manage>Historical Data** from the shortcut menu.

The Manage Historical Data dialog appears.

| anage Historical Data - m | ailbox body contents | × |
|--------------------------------------|--|--------------|
| 🔒 Date Run 🔽 | Records User Name | View |
| 2/13/2004 3:27:5 2/2/2004 9:45:10 | 6/6 Q-CABBAGE\jmoneil 13/13 Q-CABBAGE\jmoneil | Delete |
| | | Run Baseline |
| | | Lock |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| • | | Help |
| | Max Historical Runs (per user): 5 | Done |
| | | |

Fig. 246 Manage Historical Data Dialog

2 Select the two historical datasets that you want to baseline. Hold the **Control** key down as you make your selections.

Note: The **Run Baseline** button appears dimmed if the data source in the query definition does not support baselining.

3 Click **Run Baseline**.

The **Baseline Options** dialog appears, configured with the default settings.

| Baseline Options | X |
|-------------------------------|-----------|
| Record Status to Include: | OK |
| Added Deleted | Cancel |
| Changed | Help |
| Unchanged | |
| List Field Display Options | |
| Show added and deleted li | ist items |
| O Show old and new list value | es |

Fig. 247 Baseline Options Dialog

- 4 Select a **Record Status** option.
- 5 Select a List Field Display option.
- 6 Click OK.

The delta dataset results appear on a baseline grid.

| Edit View Help | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| g/icons.gif: 🕞 | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| n. 💽 | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Record 1 of 6 Messages: 0 | | | | | |
| i | | | | | |

Fig. 248 Delta Dataset Results on a Baseline Grid

The baseline grid displays all records from the two historical datasets that match the selected record status options. The baseline grid is used to create a report of the delta dataset, or to create a delta dataset export file.

Exporting The Exporting feature allows you to format and send data so that it can be used by another application. You can export the following types of BindView data:

- Datasets
- Historical datasets
- Delta datasets
- Session logs
- Charts

The **Export Setup** dialog is used to export datasets and session logs. The data is exported by either the Console or the Information Server machine, depending on how you open the **Export Setup** dialog.

Table 6 Invoking the Export Setup Dialog

| Items that invoke the Export Setup Dialog | Machine to Export From |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Export button 🚺 on the Grid toolbar | Console |
| Export command on the Grid menu of a grid | Console |
| Export button and command on the Grid menu of a baseline grid | Information Server |
| Run>And Export command on the Query Binder shortcut menu | Information Server |
| Export button on the Manage Historical Data dialog | Information Server |
| Query or Baseline Post Process Commands dialog | Console or Information Server |

Exporting from the Information Server machine is more secure because BindView Administrators can restrict the directories that users can send export files to.

You can also use the **Export Settings** dialog to save export settings so that you can apply them to multiple datasets or session logs.

| Before you export a dataset or session log, you must configure the report settings and the export mail server. | |
|---|--|
| Report settings determine the appearance of the report. | |
| To configure the report settings | |
| Click the Grid menu on the dataset and select Report Settings. | |
| 2 Select the Fields tab and select the Print check boxes for each field you want to export. | |
| 3 If you are creating a text-based export file, you should select Auto in the Column Width area on the Spreadsheet tab. | |
| For additional information on report settings, see the <i>BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . | |
| You can export a dataset or session log to a disk file by specifying a path in the File Name box on the Export Settings dialog. | |
| 1 Open the Export Setup dialog using one of the methods listed in Table 6 on page 244. Folder Name: ???????????????????????????????????? | |
| | |

Fig. 249 Export Setup Dialog

Done

Cancel

Help

2 Click Choose.

Export Now

The **Choose Export** dialog appears.



Fig. 250 Choose Export Dialog

- **3** Select a format for the export file from the **Format** drop-down list.
- 4 Select **Disk file** from the **Destination** drop-down list.
- 5 Click OK.

The **Export Setup** dialog reappears with the format and destination settings that you defined (Fig. 249 on page 245).

Note: If you selected **Character-separated values**, **Paginated Text** or **MS SQL Server** for your format, a secondary dialog appears. Access the context-sensitive Help on the dialog for detailed information on defining the required format settings.

- 6 Enter the path and file name in the **Folder Name** and **File** boxes. You can use the browse (...) button to select a different folder.
- 7 If you want to add the exported data to an existing file or table, select **Append to file/table if it already exists**.

If the selected export format does not support the append feature, this option will be dimmed.

8 Click **Export now**.

The dataset or session log is exported in the defined format to the disk file destination indicated in the **Folder Name** box.

Saving ExportThe three types of default export settings are automatically appliedSettingsto the Export Settings dialog according to the following hierarchy:

- Export Settings Item
- User (My Setup)
- Global (Everyone's Setup)

All default export settings are stored on the Information Server. The export settings item and user default export settings are specific to the user who created them. However, all users can access export settings items that reside in the Shared folder, and the global default export settings that are saved by the BindView Administrator.

- To save export settings
 - **1** Open the **Export Setup** dialog (Fig. 249 on page 245).
 - 2 Click To Export Settings Item.

The Save Report Item dialog appears.

| Save Report Item | | × |
|--|------|---|
| Browse in Folder: My Items | • | 1 |
| | | _ |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | _ |
| | | _ |
| Save Type: JExport Settings and Shortcut allowed | | |
| OK Cancel | Help | Þ |

Fig. 251 Save Report Item Dialog

- **3** Enter the name of the export settings item in the **Selection Name** box.
- 4 Click OK.

The **Export Setup** dialog reappears (Fig. 249 on page 245).

5 Click OK.

The settings are saved as the default for the query binder.

As My Setup ExportIf you want to save the settings defined in the Export Setup dialog
as your user default export settings, click As My Setup in the Save
area.

Global Default ExportOnly BindView Administrators can save global default exportSettingsSettings for bv-Control for Windows users of the Information
Server.

An Information Server can store only one group of global default export style settings at a time. When a BindView Administrator saves new global default export style settings, the old settings are automatically deleted.

Information Servers cannot share global default export style settings.

BindView Administrators use the **As Everyone's Setup** button in the **Save** area of the **Export Setup** dialog to save the settings defined on the dialog as the global default export settings.

Note: The **As Everyone's Setup** option appears dimmed if you are not a BindView Administrator.

To apply export settings

- **1** Open the **Export Setup** dialog (Fig. 249 on page 245).
- 2 Click From Export Settings Item in the Load area.

The Select Report Item/Folder/Shortcut dialog appears.

| Select Report It | em/Folder/Shortcut | × |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Browse in Folder: | My Items | È |
| 👔 Settings 1 | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| , Selection Name: | Settings 1 | |
| Selection Type: | Export Settings and Shortcut allowed | |
| | OK Cancel Help | > |

Fig. 252 Select Report Item/Folder/Shortcut Dialog

3 Select the export settings item and click **OK**.

The **Export Setup** dialog is now configured with the settings saved in the export settings items.

For detailed information on exporting, see the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

| Creating Task Lists | The Task Lists feature allows you to group several tasks and manage them as one task file. A task list file can contain the following items: | | | |
|------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | Query tasks | | | |
| | Baseline tasks | | | |
| | Post-process commands for added tasks | | | |
| | Summary file commands | | | |
| | When you run a task list, the Information Server processes all tasks and post process commands added to the task list in a sequence. If a baseline task is dependent on a query task, the Information Server processes the query task before the baseline task. | | | |
| | When you create a task list, you can perform the following activities: | | | |
| | Add query tasks from query binders | | | |
| | Define post process commands for added query tasks | | | |
| | Apply a scope for added query tasks | | | |
| | Add baseline tasks from query binders | | | |
| | Define post process commands for added baseline tasks | | | |
| | Import query or baseline tasks from saved task lists Define summers file menorities | | | |
| | | | | |
| ► | To create a new task list | | | |
| | 1 Click the New Task List 躗 icon on the product toolbar. | | | |
| | The Task List dialog appears. | | | |
| | Task List - Untitled | | | |
| | Save | | | |
| | Title Type Save As | | | |
| | Bun | | | |
| | Options | | | |
| | Scope | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | Add.,, Import.,, Modify,, Delete | | | |
| | Close | | | |

Fig. 253 Task List Dialog

2 Click Add.

The **Select a Task Type** dialog appears.

| Select a Task Type | × |
|--------------------|--------|
| Query Baceline | Add |
| | Cancel |
| | Help |
| | |
| | |
| , | |

Fig. 254 Select a Task Type Dialog

3 Select the task type and click **Add**.

The **Select Query Binder** dialog appears.

| Select Query Binder | × | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Use '>' button to add from Available Items to the Selected Items. Use '<' button to remove from Selected Items. Use '>>' button to add all and '<<' to remove all. | | | | | |
| Browse in Folder: My Items | Image: Image: Ima | | | | |
| Available Items: | Selected Items: | | | | |
| Mailbox Properties | You can type the full path here | | | | |
| Tracking Logs | > | | | | |
| | >>1 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | < | | | | |
| | ~ | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Selection Type: Uuery Binder and Shortcut a | allowed | | | | |
| | OK. Cancel Help | | | | |

Fig. 255 Select Query Binder Dialog

4 Select the Query Binder from the **Available Items** list and click > or click in the **Selected Items** list and enter the full path of the item. To add all items from the **Available Items** list, click >>.

You can browse to other folders using the 📃 button.

5 Click **OK** to close the **Select Query Binder** dialog.

The following dialogs that appear are based on the user selecting a Query task type. The dialogs and steps are similar for a Baseline task type.

The **Query Task Item** dialog appears configured with the selected query binder and default post process commands.

| Query Task Item | | × |
|--------------------------------------|--------|---|
| Queries | OK | |
| My Items\Mailbox Properties | Cancel | |
| Browse to add items | Cancer | |
| | Help | |
| | | |
| | | |
| Run Post Process Commands Unattended | | |
| Post Process Commands | | |
| Save Results Back To Query | | |
| Commands Condition | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| Add Modify Remove | | |
| | | |

Fig. 256 Query Task Item Dialog

- **6** If you want to add additional query binders to the task item, click the browse (...) button and select the items.
- 7 If you want the Information Server machine to execute the added post process commands when the task list is run, select the **Run Post Process Commands Unattended** check box.

If this check box is cleared, the Console machine executes the commands.

8 Click Add.

The Query Post Process Commands dialog appears.



Fig. 257 Query Post Process Commands Dialog

A query task post process command tells the Console or Information Server machine what to do with the dataset gathered for the query task. You must have at least one post process command defined.

- **9** Select the post process command.
- 10 Click OK.

If the post process command requires additional user selections, a secondary dialog appears. If additional user selections are not required, the **Query Task Item** dialog reappears. The post process command you added appears in the **Post Process Commands** list. If you want to add another post process command, click Add and repeat Step 9 and Step 10. **11** Continue to add post process commands, if needed. 12 Click OK. The **Task List** dialog reappears. The guery task you added appears in the list of added tasks. After you have saved the task list, you can run it at any time. **Running Task Lists** You run task lists from the following locations: • Task List dialog Shortcut menu of a saved task list Schedules Command line Use the **Run** button on the **Task List** dialog to run the task list. After you run the task list, the **Run** button changes to **Run Again**. Saved task lists have shortcut menus that you can use to run the task list. To start a task list at a specified time, you can use the Console Create Schedule Wizard. As long as the BindView RMS Information Server is running, the task will be processed at the time you specify. *Note:* If you create the Scheduled Task on a machine hosting the BindView RMS Console, rather than a machine hosting the Information Server, and the machine is off, the Task List may not be processed on schedule. To ensure that it is processed at the desired time, you should consider creating the Scheduled Task on the machine hosting the Information Server. You can also use the command-line task list launcher or a third-party scheduling application. For additional information on scheduling task lists, see "Creating Schedules" on page 253. For information on using the command-line task list launcher or a third-party scheduling application, see the *BindView RMS Console* and Information Server User Guide.
Creating Schedules

You can schedule existing task lists and queries for automatic processing by the BindView Information Server using the **Create Schedule Wizard**. As long as the machine that hosts the BindView Information Server is on and the BindView Information Server Service is running, the scheduled item will be processed at the specified time.

You can schedule tasks lists or queries and have them processed one time only, or on a daily, weekly, or monthly basis. When a task list is scheduled, the task list is processed using the user name and password combination you supply exactly as if that user executed the task list. Any post processing the task list performs will also be executed.

If the tasks in the task list are not set up to run post process commands unattended, all non-interactive post process commands (such as exporting) will be performed. Post process commands that require user interaction (such as displaying a grid or chart) will be performed when the user who created the schedule starts the Console.

To view existing schedules, click the **Schedules** container in the Console tree.

Note: If the current user is a BindView User, only the schedules they create appear. If the current user is a BindView Administrator, all existing schedules appear.

For complete information on Schedules, see the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

To schedule task lists

 Click the New Schedule
 icon on the product toolbar, or click Schedules in the Console tree and double-click <doubleclick to add new schedule> in the Details pane.

The **Welcome to the Create Schedules Wizard** appears (Fig. 258 on page 254).



Fig. 258 Welcome to the Create Schedules Wizard

2 Click Next.

The Choose a schedule type panel appears.



Fig. 259 Choose a Schedule Type Panel

3 Select Task List Schedule and click Next.

The **Add Items** panel appears.

| Create Schedules Wizard | × |
|--|------|
| Add Items You can either type or browse to the folder which contains all the items or type or browse to the specific item you want to run. | 6 |
| Items or Folders | |
| Type or browse to the folder or item. | |
| | |
| < Back Next.> Cancel | Help |

Fig. 260 Add Items Panel

4 Enter the full path and name of the folder or item to be added to the schedule. You can also use the browse (...) button that appears when you click in the text box to select the item. You can add one or more task lists, shortcuts to task lists, or folders.

If you add a folder, all the items in that folder will be added to the schedule, including subfolder contents, shortcuts, and linked folders.

If you click the browse (...) button, the **Select file** dialog appears.

| Select file | × |
|--|---|
| Use '>' button to add from Available Items to the Selected Items. Use '>>' button to add all and '< Browse in Folder: \\My Items | Selected Items. Use '<' button to remove from <' to remove all. |
| Available Items: | Selected Items: |
| ✓ Task List Baseline of Mailbox Contents ✓ Task List Baseline of Mailbox Properties | You can type the full path here |
| Selection Type: Folder, Task List and Shortco | ut allowed |
| | OK Cancel Help |

Fig. 261 Select File Dialog

5 Select the item from the **Available Items** list and click **>**. To add all items from the **Available Items** list, click **>>**.

To remove an item in the **Selected Items** list, select it and click **<**. To remove all items, click **<<**.

6 Click OK.

The Add Items panel reappears (Fig. 260 on page 255).

7 Click Next.

The Name the schedule panel appears.

| Create Schedules Wizard | | | | X |
|---|------|--------|--------|------|
| Name the schedule Type a name for this schedule. | | | | 6 |
| Type a name for this schedule: | | | | |
| Perform this task: | | | | |
| C Daily | | | | |
| C Weekly | | | | |
| C Monthly | | | | |
| 🔘 One Time Only | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| < | Back | Next > | Cancel | Help |

Fig. 262 Name the Schedule Panel

- 8 Enter a name for the schedule in the **Type a name for this schedule** field and select how often the task should be run.
- 9 Click Next.

The **Specify Schedule** panel appears.

| Create Schedules Wizard | × |
|--|------|
| Specify Schedule Choose when the task should be performed. | |
| Start time: 10:30:00 PM 💌 Every 2 💌 weeks | |
| Select the day(s) of the week below: | |
| 🔽 Monday 🔲 Wednesday 🔲 Saturday | |
| 🗖 Tuesday 🔲 Thursday 🔲 Sunday | |
| Friday | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 263 Specify Schedule Panel - Weekly Options

The contents of the **Specify Schedule** panel vary depending on how often you chose to run the task on the **Name the schedule** panel.

- **10** Select the time the task should run in the **Start time** box.
- **11** Select the options specific to the schedule and click **Next**.

The **Specify Account Information** panel appears.

| Create Schedules Wizard | | × |
|---|--|----------|
| Specify Account Informat Enter the name and pass that user. | ion vord of a user. The task will run as if it were started by | E |
| Enter the user name: | Q-DURIAN\administrator | |
| Enter the password: | | |
| Confirm password: | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | K Back Next> Cancel | Help |

Fig. 264 Specify Account Information Panel

12 Enter the **User Name** and **Password** that the BindView Information Server uses when processing the task lists in the schedule, and confirm the password.

Caution: Use caution when using another user's credentials. The other user could make changes to their account, including changing the password, at any time. If changes are made to the account and you do not update the credentials in the schedule, the schedule will not be processed at the specified time.

13 Click Next.

The **Summary** panel appears.

| ate Schedu | les Wizard | 2 |
|--|---|------|
| Summary You are create ti | about to create a schedule with the following properties. Click Next to re schedule. | 6 |
| <u>Name:</u> <u>Type:</u> <u>Items:</u> <u>Schedu</u> | Mailbox body contents TaskList \My Items\Task List Baseline of Mailbox Contents I <u>ed to run:</u> At 10:20:00 AM on every Monday of every week starting 2/17/2004 | |
| Type a b | ief description for this schedule: | |
| | < Back Next > Cancel | Help |

Fig. 265 Summary Panel

14 Verify that the settings are correct and enter a description of the schedule in the Type a brief description for this schedule field.

If you want to change any of the settings, click **Back**.

15 Click Next.

The **Create Schedules Wizard c**ompletion panel appears.



Fig. 266 Create Schedules Wizard Completion Panel

- 16 Click Finish to close the Wizard.
- **17** The new schedule item appears in the Details pane of the **Schedules** container.

| Charting | The chart feature is used to display datasets in a graphic format. Using the Chart Builder Wizard, you can create the following types of charts: | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| | Series – Displays the relative values of one or more fields for each record in a dataset. | | | |
| | • Histogram – Displays the value frequencies for the records associated with a single field in a dataset. For information on creating a Histogram Chart, see the <i>BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide</i> . | | | |
| | You can open the Chart Builder Wizard from the following locations: | | | |
| | Chart options in the Query Options dialog Chart-related Post Process Commands dialogs Grid toolbar and View menu Chart toolbar and View menu Query Binder shortcut menu | | | |
| Creating a Series Chart | You should only use the series chart type if the dataset you are charting contains a limited number of fields and records. | | | |
| I | To create a series chart Open the Chart Builder Wizard and click Next | | | |
| | i Open the chart Builder Wizard and click Next. | | | |
| | Chart Builder Wizard Welcome to the Chart Builder Wizard The chart builder wizard will lead you through the different steps involved in the creation of your chart. If the current data file contains any saved chart templates, you will be able to select one of those in order to use its settings. To continue, press Next. | | | |
| 🗖 Don't display this page anymore | | | | |

Fig. 267 Chart Builder Wizard Welcome Panel

Finish

Cancel

Help

< Back Next >

| Chart Bu Cha | uilder Wizard × rt Type You can choose the type and style of your chart. |
|-----------------|--|
| | Chart Type: Internet Column |
| | |
| | < Back Next > Finish Cancel Help |

The **Chart Type** panel appears.



2 Ensure that the **Histogram** check box is cleared and click **Next**.

| Chart Builder Wizard |
|---|
| Chart Data Source You can define one or more series to be displayed in the chart. |
| Series: Member Count Series Properties Source field: Member Count Legend: Member Count Category (X) axis labels: Domain ▼ |
| < Back Next > Finish Cancel Help |

The Chart Data Source panel appears.

Fig. 269 Chart Data Source Panel

- **3** Designate a field for each **Series** position by selecting the field from the **Source field** list.
- 4 Click **Add**. You must designate a field for each series position in the **Series** list.
- 5 Select the desired label from the **Category (X) axis labels** list and click **Next**.

| The Char | t Titles | panel | appears. |
|----------|----------|-------|----------|
|----------|----------|-------|----------|

| Chart Builder Wizard | × |
|--|----|
| Chart Titles You can specify the different titles that can appear on the chart. | |
| Chart Title: | |
| i X Axis Title: Display Name | 1 |
| Y Axis Title: | 1 |
| < Back Next > Finish Cancel He | lp |

Fig. 270 Chart Titles Panel

6 Enter the titles for the chart and click **Next**.

The **Chart Legends** panel appears.

| Chart Builder Wizard |
|---|
| Chart Legends You can choose the different legend options and locations. |
| Show series legend box Series legend box location: Right Show X axis legend box X axis legend box location: Bottom |
| Enable scrolling chart |
| Number of visible columns: 10 |
| < Back Next> Finish Cancel Help |

Fig. 271 Chart Legends Panel

7 Select the legend check boxes and the position.

Even if you do not select legends now, you can use the chart legend shortcut menu of the completed chart to add them later.

8 Add a scroll bar, if needed, and enter the number of series displayed on the chart at one time.

A scroll bar is automatically added to charts that have 20 or more series positions.

9 Click Finish.

A series chart appears.



Fig. 272 Column Series Chart

10 Using the Product

In This Chapter

| r | Understanding Queries | |
|---|--------------------------------|-----|
| | Scoping | |
| | ActiveAdmin | 277 |
| | Effective Permissions Analysis | 281 |
| | Administrative Shares | 283 |
| | Communication Settings | 284 |
| | Disk Space Settings | |
| | Health & Status Check | 285 |
| | | |

| Understanding Queries | bv-Control for Windows provides a full-featured, query-based interface allowing administrators to easily build custom queries. Results from the queries can be saved for analysis and planning of your environment at a later time. | | |
|--------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A query is a series of structured questions posed to obtain specific information about a particular resource or group of resources. Resources are components in your enterprise such as file servers, workstations, and operating systems. The query results are returned in the form of a Grid, Chart, or a Report. | | |
| | By querying the Windows environment using bv-Control for Windows, administrators can centrally view events without having to manually scan through hundreds of events across multiple servers. Using the Query Builder process, administrators can create a report that is specific to the data sources and fields of the query. | | |
| Scoping | Scoping allows you to scan data for a particular subset of your network. This capability enables you to narrow the search parameters of a query. For example, if a domain represents too large a search area, you can narrow the focus by choosing a more definitive network resource, such as a particular server within your network. | | |
| Default Scope | The Default Scope definition is the same for all data sources with the exceptions of the Group and User data sources. The Default scope is interpreted as follows: | | |
| | Look in the user's current Connection Database and get a list of all the domains and workgroups that the user can report on. | | |
| | From this list, create a list of scopes. For each domain, create a domain scope. For each workgroup machine, create a machine scope. | | |
| | A domain scope means include all of the objects for each machine in this domain. For example, in the Services data source, a domain scope includes all of the services installed on each machine in the domain. | | |
| | A machine scope means to include all of the objects on the machine. Again with the Services data source example, the machine scope includes all of the services on the machine. | | |
| | The exceptions to the default scope definition listed are the User and Group data sources. For both data sources, a domain scope includes all of the users or groups from the primary domain controller. | | |
| | Note: If you want to override and modify the Default scope, refer to the <i>BindView Console and Information Server User Guide</i> for instructions. | | |

Advanced Scopes bv-Control for Windows allows you to use Advanced Scopes to specify which items on your network are included in a query. The normal scope builder allows you to browse your network for items to include in a query's scope. Advanced Scopes allow you to type the names of domains, machines, directories, and so on to specify a scope. In addition, Advanced Scopes allow you to use variables and Scope Files to specify a query's scope. These abilities are especially useful in very large domains, since it can take time to enumerate all the items in the domain when browsing for objects.

• To define an Advanced Scope

- **1** Open the Query Builder and select the **Scope** tab.
- 2 Click the plus (+) symbol next to the **Advanced Scopes** container.

The Advanced Scopes container opens and displays the available Advanced Scopes for the selected data source.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Machines Query | × |
|---|---|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope | |
| Available Item(s) | |
| Default Scope Microsoft Windows Network Active Directory Advanced Scopes Scope Files Scope to a Domain Scope to Machines in a Container Scope to a Machine in a Domain Scope to a Machine in a Workgroup Named Scopes | |
| Add Scope Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Selected Item(s) | |
| ি Default | |
| Remove Scope Save as Named Scope Additional Settings | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 273 Advanced Scopes Container on Scope Tab

3 Select the type of Advanced Scope you wish to add to the Query Scope and click **Add**.

The **Additional Settings** dialog for that scope appears. The contents of the dialog will differ, depending on which Advanced Scope type you choose.

| Additional Settings | × |
|----------------------------------|------|
| Machine Scoping Options - Domain | |
| Domain Name | |
| OK Cancel | Help |

Fig. 274 Additional Settings dialog

4 Enter the relevant information for the Advanced Scope and click **OK**.

The Advanced Scope item you add will be added to the current scope.

Searching for machines to include in a Scope

You can use variables, IP Addresses, Simple and Regular Expressions, and Scope Files to create an Advanced Scope. To search for machines to include in a scope, simply create an Advanced Scope, then use items from this table to specify what to search for. (variables, IP addresses, GREP, scope files)

| Table | 7 |
|-------|---|
|-------|---|

| To Search Using | Use | Comments |
|--------------------------|-----|---|
| Simple Expressions | ? | Begin the search string with a "?". Use standard command- prompt wildcards. |
| Regular Expressions | / | Begin the search with a "/". Use any Regular Expressions to search. |
| Machine-Name Variable | % | Begin the search with a "%" symbol. Use any Windows machine- name variables. The complete list can be found in the bv-Control for Windows Online Help. |

266 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

| Та | bl | e | 7 |
|----|----|---|---|
|----|----|---|---|

| Comments |
|--|
| Begin with a ":" symbol, followed by the pattern to search for. Enter the address you wish to search from, a dash, and the address you wish to search to. You may also enter a single address. All addresses must be groups of 4 32-bit numbers, and you can use hex numbers if you precede them with x or 0x. |
| Begin with "%file=" and the filename. See below for instructions on creating a scope file. |
| _ |

?ACCOUNT*

?HOUSTON-W@K?

/DOC-SERVER[^a-f]W2K[SPsp]

%ALL

Search Examples

%SERVERS

%WORKSTATIONS

%MQES

%SQES

%QES

:192.168.127.5

:0xC6.xA8.xAA.x56

:172.5.128.97-172.5.128.205

IP Addresses must be in following form:

A.B.C.D

where A, B, C, D are "One Value," decimal, octal, or hex numbers. All values in the Octal grouping need to be preceded with a O. Hex numbers start with prefix "x" or "0x". The following addresses are equivalent and valid:

| | (Decimal) 192.168.1.1 |
|-------------|--|
| | ("One Value") 3232235777 |
| | (Octal) 0300.0250.01.01 |
| | (Hex) 0xC0.0xA8.0x1.0x1 |
| | An IP address that has more than four numbers is invalid. |
| | %file=DocMachines.txt |
| | |
| Scope Files | bv-Control for Windows allows you to predetermine Scope Files . These are text files with lists of domains and machines in those domains which are usable as the scope for queries. These scope files can even be generated by creating a bv-Control for Windows Query and exporting the resulting Grid report to a comma- separated value (.csv) file. You can create Scope Files by using the CreateScopeFile.exe application located in the \BindView\RMS\bin\ directory. |
| | You can use the % feature to report on a list of machines, servers, workstations, and domain controllers in the enterprise. For example: |
| | Entire enterprise: domain=%all |
| | %ALL |
| | domain=mycompany |
| | • computer1 |
| | • computer2 |
| | • computer3 |
| | • computer4 |
| | List of machines in the mycompany domain |
| | domain=mycompany |
| | • computer10 |
| | • computer11 |
| | • computer12 |
| | • computer13 |
| | All servers in enterprise: domain=%all |
| | %SERVERS |
| | All workstations in enterprise: domain=%all |
| | %WORKSTATIONS |
| | All domain controllers in enterprise: domain=%all |
| | %DCS |
| | You can also use Scope Files to specify groups and users. When you specify a group, use the name of the domain followed by the group type. For example, |
| | domain=MYDOMAIN, grouptype=domainglobal |

- Domain Admins
- Domain Users
- Domain Guests

domain=MYDOMAIN, grouptype=domainlocal

- Administrators
- Guests

List of groups in the mycompany domain

domain=mycompany, grouptype=domainglobal

- ggroup1
- ggroup2
- ggroup3
- ggroup4
- Domain Admins
- Domain Users
- Domain Guests

domain=mycompany, grouptype=domainlocal

- Administrators
- guests
- Igroup1
- lgroup2
- lgroup3
- lgroup4

When using Scope Files to specify domain users, use the following format:

domain=MYDOMAIN

- Administrator
- guest
- Power User

List of users from the mycompany domain:

domain=mycompany

- Administrator
- guest
- Power User
- user 1
- user 2
- user 3
- user 4

In addition, bv-Control for Windows still supports scope files in the format where domain and machine pairs are listed with one pair per line, separated by commas. Thus,

MyDomain, Machine1

MyDomain, Machine2

The domain/workgroup name and machine names can be enclosed in quotes, as when you export from bv-Control for Windows. If you export a query created in the Machines data source, with the default fields, with filters and scoping you add, the exported .csv file will be in the correct format. Any line beginning with "Exported default column headings" will be ignored.

You can also use Scope Files to specify machines in workgroups. When you specify a machine in a workgroup, do not use the name of the workgroup. Instead, use the name of the machine twice, separated by commas. Thus,

Machine1, Machine1

Machine2, Machine 2

Scope Files are stored in the

\BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles directory at the BindView Information Server. The contents of these files can be viewed from the Advanced Scopes folder in the Query Builder. If you create a scope file, it should contain nothing but the domain and computer pairs and comments delimited by # signs.

To use a Scope File in a query, simply add it to your scope list by selecting it from the Scope Files folder under Advanced Scopes in the Query Builder.

• To use bv-Control for Windows to Create a Scope File

The Machines data source within bv-Control for Windows can be used to create a scope file that can be used for another bv-Control for Windows query. The advantages of using bv-Control for Windows to create a Scope File are that you can use the tools in bv-Control for Windows to locate only those machine that you want to include and that you can reproduce the Scope File automatically, even if your network's contents change.

- 1 Create a query in the **Machines** data source that includes only the Domain/Workgroup Name and Machine Name fields. Use the Filter Specification and Scope tabs to limit the report to the machines you wish to include.
- **2** Run the query as a Grid.
- **3** Choose **Export** from the **Grid** menu in the result window.

| Folder Name: %PERSONAL% | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| File Name: | 7 |
| Append to file if it a | lready exists |
| Remembered Export Setups | Save |
| Everyone's Setup | As Everyone's Setup |
| My Setup | As My Setup |
| From Export Settings Item | To Export Settings Item |
| | |

Fig. 275 Export Setup dialog

4 Click the **Choose** button.

The **Choose Export** dialog appears.

| Choose Export | × |
|--|--------|
| Format Comma-separated values (CSV) | ОК |
| Destination | Cancel |
| Disk file | Help |

Fig. 276 Choose Export dialog

- 5 Choose **Comma-separated values (CSV)** from the **Format** dropdown list and **Disk file** from the **Destination** dropdown list.
- 6 Click OK. The Export Setup dialog reappears.
- 7 In the Folder Name field, enter C:\Program Files\BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles or click the browse (...) button and browse to the directory.

Note: You must export to the **Program Files\BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles** directory for the BindView RMS Console to properly recognize the Scope File.

- 8 Change the file name to something descriptive of the scope and make its extension .txt. The file name you enter will be the one you will use searching using the scope file.
- **9** Click **OK** to save the settings if you will be exporting later, or click **Export Now** to export the file to the Scope Files directory now.

Once you create the scope file using a text editor or bv-Control for Windows, it is ready for use.

To use a Scope file

You can use a Scope file to search for machines in an advanced scope or directly, as a scope. Before you can use Scope Files, you must create the Scope Files you wish to use and place them in the **Program Files\BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles** directory. Once your Scope Files exist, they are ready for use.

- **1** Create a query in any bv-Control for Windows data source.
- 2 To specify the scope, open the Advanced Scopes item in the **Available Items** panel.

The first item in the list of Advanced Scopes is the **Scope Files** folder. Open it and you will see that all the Scope Files you have created are listed.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Users Query | | × |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope | | |
| - Australia la sector | | 1 |
| | | |
| | 4 | |
| | | |
| 🚊 📄 Scope Files | | |
| Example.txt | | |
| E Selected Computers.txt | | |
| Scope to a Domain | | |
| Scope to a Domain Group | | |
| - 🧕 Scope to a Machine in a Domain | | |
| Scope to a Local User on a Machine in a Domain | | |
| Scope to a Local Group on a Machine in a Domain | | |
| | <u> </u> | |
| Add Scope | Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| | | |
| Selected Item(s) | | |
| P Default | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | A stable and the state of | |
| Hemove Scope Save as Named Scope | Agalional settings | |
| | | |
| <u> </u> | <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp | |

Fig. 277 Scope Tab - Scope Files folder

The Scope Files themselves have plus signs (+) by their names. You can click the plus sign to browse the contents of the Scope File. You can include the entire Scope File or any individual machine in the scope file in the Scope of the Query you are creating by selecting it and clicking **Add Scope**. You can also use a Scope File in a query by selecting any Advanced Scope item.

| Additional Settings | × |
|--|------|
| User Scoping Options - Machine Local User | |
| Domain Name Machine Name User Name | |
| OK Cancel | Help |



3 In the **Machine Name** field in the Advanced Scope dialog, enter %file= and the name of the scope you wish to use.

The Scope File will act like a variable, and every machine in the Scope File will be included in the Scope.

Scope File Generator You can also create scope files by using the Scope File Generator application. This application enables you to generate new scope files from an exported comma separated value (.csv) file. The application is named **CreateScopeFile.exe** and is located in the **\BindView\RMS\bin** directory. You can use this application to create scope files for users, groups, and computers. This tool can be run from the command line or from the BindView RMS task list (currently the task list does not support the GUI mode on this application).

When creating **user** scope files, the .csv file must be exported from a user query that contains the following fields:

- Domain/Workgroup Name and/or Domain Name
- User Name (pre-Windows 2000)

When creating **group** scope files, the .csv file must be exported from a group query that contains these fields:

- Domain/Workgroup Name and/or Domain Name
- Group Name (pre-Windows 2000)
- Group Type

When creating **machine** scope files, the .csv file must be exported from a group query that contains these fields:

- Domain/Workgroup Name
- Machine Name (pre-Windows 2000)

| <i>Note:</i> To create a Machine scope file for workgroup machines, the |
|---|
| comma separated values file must contain the 'Member of |
| Workgroup' field. Machines that are members of the workgroup will |
| be listed under the [Workgroup] section. If the file does not contain |
| the 'Member of Workgroup' field, the machines are treated as |
| domain machines. |

The scope files you create that include file name and path will be saved to a location that you specify. If you do not specify the path, the CreateScopeFile.exe utility will automatically save your scope files into the **BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles** directory.

- To run the CreateScopeFile utility from the command line
 - 1 Enter CreateScopeFile into the command line.
 - 2 Specify the type of scope file you want to create by using -c, -g, or -u.
 - -c = machine scope file
 - -g = group scope file
 - -u = user scope file
 - **3** Provide the input file name in a comma separated values (.csv) file format.
 - 4 Provide the output file name. The scope file will be saved to a location that you specify. If you do not specify the path, the scope file will automatically save your scope files to the BindView\RMS\Control\Windows\ScopeFiles directory.

Excluding Scopes This version of bv-Control for Windows gives you the ability to exclude scopes from within each data source. You can use this functionality to create scope files which contain computers, groups or users that you want to exclude from any scope you have defined.

For example,

To mark a scope file scope as an exclusion, preface the `%file=' with `[-]'.

Example: Scope('machine', 'ad', '[-]%file=machine.txt')

Note: The arithmetic operator for this behavior (-) is evaluated across the entire set of scopes, not just the current line.

Named Scopes

The **Scope** tab also allows you to select a Named Scope. Named Scopes allow you to save groups of Scope items for reuse. A Named Scope determines which files, folders, or servers the Query Builder will use to obtain its information. You can either define and save a Named Scope, or select from a previously saved Named Scope to query. You can also use the

To select from a previously saved Named Scope, refer "To select an existing Named Scope" on page 277.

• To define a Named Scope

1 On the **Scope** tab of the **Query Builder** dialog, drill down to the area where you want the query to begin its search and select the appropriate items.

Fig. 279 is an example of a **Users** data source Scope tab.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Users Query | × |
|---|---|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope | |
| Available Item(s) | |
| Default Scope Microsoft Windows Network Graphic Canada Control Co | |
| Scope to a Domain | |
| Add Scope Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Selected Item(s) | |
| 登 Default | |
| Bemove Scope Save as Named Scope Additional Settings | |
| QKLelp | |

Fig. 279 Query Builder - Scope Tab

2 Click Add Scope.

Depending on which data source you selected, the **Additional Settings** dialog may appear to give you additional advanced

scope filter options. The **Additional Settings** dialog allows you to perform more filtering on the object(s) you selected.

| Additional Settings | × |
|--|---|
| User Scoping Options | |
| All users in the domain All local users on all machines in the domain | |
| C All users in the domain and all local users on all machines in the domain | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 280 Additional Settings Dialog – User Scoping Options

3 Make any needed changes to the Additional Settings options, then click **OK**.

The **Query Builder** dialog reappears. The Named Scope you added appears in the **Selected Item(s)** box.

Note: Remember to remove the default scope definition if you do not want to include it in your results.

4 Click the Save as Named Scope button.

The Named Scope dialog appears.

| Named Scope | |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| Enter a name for this | named scope: |
| 1 | |
| ļ | |
| <u>0</u> K | <u>C</u> ancel |
| | |

Fig. 281 Named Scope Dialog

5 Enter a name for the Named Scope and click **OK** to save the Named Scope. You can now use the Named Scope in Queries.

You can define and save multiple Named Scopes. You can then use those saved Named Scopes and set them as the default scope. For more information on how to set a default scope, refer to the *BindView Console and Information Server User Guide*.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows Users Query | × |
|---|---|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Scope Available Item(s) Image: Specification Microsoft Windows Network Image: Specification Image: Specification Scope Image: Specification Image: Specification Scope Scope Image: Spec | |
| Add Scope Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Selected Item(s) []] <tr< td=""><td></td></tr<> | |
| <u> </u> | |

The Named Scope is saved in the Named Scopes folder.

Fig. 282 Named Scopes Folder

6 Click OK.

Note: Remember to remove the default scope definition if you do not want to include it in your results.

To select an existing Named Scope

- 1 Open the **Name Scopes** folder (Fig. 282) and select the Named Scope you want to query.
- 2 Click the **Add Scope** button.

The Named Scope you selected appears in the **Selected Item(s)** box.

3 Click OK.

For additional information on creating and managing Named Scopes, please see the *BindView RMS Console and Information Server User Guide*.

ActiveAdmin

ActiveAdmin® is a bv-Control for Windows feature that allows you to make changes to the contents of certain fields. When a user with ActiveAdmin privileges makes changes to these fields, bv-Control for Windows makes those changes on your Windows network, using the ActiveAdmin credentials in the Credential Database assigned to the user. For all practical purposes, the effect produced is as if the user whose credentials are in the Credential Database made the changes with Windows native tools.

In addition to being powerful, ActiveAdmin is easy to use, since it builds on the bv-Control for Windows interface. ActiveAdmin fields can be included in any Query. When you view the results of a Query containing ActiveAdmin Fields in a grid, the ActiveAdmin fields appear in blue text in the resulting grid.

► To edit ActiveAdmin fields

- 1 Ensure that the current user of the BindView RMS Console has permission to use ActiveAdmin and that the user has a Credential Database assigned with credentials to make ActiveAdmin changes.
- **2** Create a Query which uses one or more ActiveAdmin fields and view its results as a grid.

| 🛄 Quic | k List of Users | | | |
|--------|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------|---|
| Grid E | dit View Help | | | |
|] 🚉 🧃 | i 😹 🥜 🛅 📆 🛄 🕯 | 🎙 🗞 🗛 🧐 | | |
| | Domain/Workgroup Name | User Name | Full Name | ▲ |
| 1 | GRAIN | AACEMAN | ALAN ACEMAN | |
| 2 | GRAIN | AACER | AILEEN ACER | |
| 3 | GRAIN | AACKERMA | AMELIA ACKERMAN | |
| 4 | GRAIN | AACTON | ALEXANDER ACTON | |
| 5 | GRAIN | AADALE | ABIGAIL ADALE | |
| 6 | GRAIN | AADANO | AILEEN ADANO | |
| 7 | GRAIN | AADDAMS | ADAM ADDAMS | |
| 8 | GRAIN | AADKINS | ALEXANDER ADKINS | |
| 9 | GRAIN | AAKRES | ADAM AKRES | |
| 10 | GRAIN | AALBRIGH | ALEXANDER ALBRIGHT | |
| 11 | GRAIN | AALEXAND | ALAN ALEXANDER | |
| 12 | GRAIN | AALLANDE | ABIGAIL ALLANDER | |
| 13 | GRAIN | AALLANSO | ADAM ALLANSON | |
| 14 | GRAIN | AALLEGOO | ABIGAIL ALLEGOOD | |
| 15 | GRAIN | AALLEN | ALAN ALLEN | |
| 16 | GRAIN | AALLISON | ALEXANDER ALLISON | - |
| F | Record 1 of 653 | Messages: O | | |

Fig. 283 Quick List of Users dataset

3 Right-click on the value in one of the ActiveAdmin fields. The context dropdown menu appears.

| 🔲 Quic | k List of Users | | | _ 🗆 🗵 |
|--------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|----------|
| Grid E | dit View Help | | | |
|] 🗟 🧃 | ž i 🗞 🛷 i 🎁 號 i 🛄 i 🕯 | 🎙 🗞 🗛 🧐 | | |
| | Domain/Workgroup Name | User Name | Full Name | ▲ |
| 1 | GRAIN | AACEMA ^N _{Vii} | | _ |
| 2 | GRAIN | AACER E | ACER | |
| 3 | GRAIN | AACKER | ACKERMAN | |
| 4 | GRAIN | AACTON CO | DER ACTON | |
| 5 | GRAIN | AADALE | ADALE | |
| 6 | GRAIN | AADANO | AILEEN ADANO | |
| 7 | GRAIN | AADDAMS | ADAM ADDAMS | |
| 8 | GRAIN | AADKINS | ALEXANDER ADKINS | |
| 9 | GRAIN | AAKRES | ADAM AKRES | |
| 10 | GRAIN | AALBRIGH | ALEXANDER ALBRIGHT | |
| 11 | GRAIN | AALEXAND | ALAN ALEXANDER | |
| 12 | GRAIN | AALLANDE | ABIGAIL ALLANDER | |
| 13 | GRAIN | AALLANSO | ADAM ALLANSON | |
| 14 | GRAIN | AALLEGOO | ABIGAIL ALLEGOOD | |
| 15 | GRAIN | AALLEN | ALAN ALLEN | |
| 16 | GRAIN | AALLISON | ALEXANDER ALLISON | |
| F | Record 1 of 653 | Messages: O | | |



4 Choose **Edit** from the menu to display the ActiveAdmin Editor for the selected field.

| User Name | | | × |
|----------------|--------|------|---|
| User: AACKERMA | | | |
| Name: | | | |
| | | | |
| OK | Cancel | Help |] |

Fig. 285 ActiveAdmin Editor - User Name dialog

There are a large number of ActiveAdmin editors. Some editors are shared between fields, others are unique to the field. For assistance with each editor, click the **Help** button in the editor dialog.

5 Make changes in the editor, then click **OK** to close the editor and then make the changes.

In some cases, all the information required for the editor is not present in the grid. In these cases, you will be prompted to allow bv-Control for Windows to collect the needed additional information from the network.

ActiveAdmin Record Operations

For certain fields, you can also make changes to the item without using an ActiveAdmin editor. These changes affect entire classes of items, rather than properties of those items. In terms of the grid, they affect a *row* rather than a *column*. For example, you can start and stop, pause, resume, and restart services. Service state does not appear in any field, but you can make the change. These changes are called **ActiveAdmin Record Operations**. To make ActiveAdmin record operation changes, right-click on any ActiveAdmin field, or on any row containing an ActiveAdmin field, and choose the **Row** item that appears on the context menu. A submenu appears.

| 🔲 Unl | itled by-Control for Windows | Services Query | | | | |
|-------|------------------------------|----------------|---|----------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| Grid | Edit View Help | | | | | |
|] 🚉 (| 🎯 🗞 🛷 🛅 號 🛄 t | 🏟 🎭 🗛 🧐 🛅 🛛 | | | | |
| | Domain/Workgroup Name | Machine Name | Display Name | Permissions (A | \dvanced) <form></form> | _ |
| 1 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Alerter | [Form] | | |
| 2 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Application Management | [Form] | | |
| 3 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Automatic Updates | [Form] | | |
| 4 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | AVSync Manager | [Form] | | |
| 5 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Background Intelligent Transfer Service | View | | |
| 6 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | BindView Enterprise Configuration Service | [Edit | | |
| 7 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | BindView Query Engine | [| | |
| 8 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | BindView Support Service | | Deskauk (Chauk 16 and "Chaukad") | |
| 9 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | BindView Web Gateway Service | | Restart (Start II NUL Starteu) | |
| 10 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | BVProcessManager | [More | Resume | |
| 11 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | ClipBook | [Form] | Start | |
| 12 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | COM+ Event System | [Form] | Stop | |
| 13 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Computer Browser | [Form] | Stop service and dependents | |
| 14 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | DHCP Client | [Form] | | _ |
| 15 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Distributed Link Tracking Client | [Form] | | |
| 16 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | Distributed Transaction Coordinator | [Form] | | |
| 17 | GRAIN | DOC-CORN-W2KP | DNS Client | [Form] | | |
| | | | | | | _ <u> </u> |
| | Record 5 of 153 | Messages: 75 | | | Mes | sages |

| Fig. 286 | Active | Admin | Record | Operation | grid |
|----------|--------|-------|--------|-----------|------|
|----------|--------|-------|--------|-----------|------|

This submenu contains the ActiveAdmin record operations relevant to the current record. Choose the action you wish to take from the menu and the action happens immediately.

Moving Active Directory Objects In addition to editing records, you can use ActiveAdmin to enable another useful feature, moving Active Directory objects. You can choose to move a user or machine account in Active Directory from one Organizational Unit (OU) to another OU by changing the Container Canonical Name field value to the canonical name of the destination OU. Changing the Container Canonical Name field to the canonical name of the destination container where the OU is located, moves the Active Directory object to the specified location within the same domain.

► To move an Active Directory object

- **1** Run a machine or user query.
- 2 Edit the **Container Canonical Name** field by right-clicking on the field and selecting **Edit** from the dropdown menu.

The Move Active Directory Object dialog appears.

| Move Activ | e Directory Object | × |
|------------|--|---|
| Machine: L | NT-ACTON-STD | |
| Move To: | gnt-canada.gnt-america.lab/Domain Controllers Browse | |
| | | |
| | OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 287 Move Active Directory Object dialog

3 Enter or click the **Browse...** button to select the location of where you want to move the machine or user account to.

The ActiveAdmin - Change Action message appears.

| ActiveAdmin - Change Action | 2 |
|---|--------|
| ActiveAdmin change action will Modify the actual object(s). D want to proceed with this action? | lo you |
| Yes No | |

4 Click **Yes** to confirm that you want to proceed with the change.

The computer or user account will then be moved to the specified location.

Effective Permissions Analysis

bv-Control for Windows allows you to report on Effective Permissions for users and groups and receive an analysis of how the membership was granted. For example, by using the Effective Permissions fields, you can verify whether a specific user right has been granted to an account or not. You can also specify analysis options using the **Analysis Options** dialog. Use this dialog to target specific analysis options for reporting user and group effective permissions.

• To set analysis options

1 Run a query using the **Security File System (Effective)** data source.

| Field Specification Filter Specification Sort Specification Scope Available Item(s) Default Scope Active Directory Active Directory Arealise Indirectory | • |
|---|----------------------------|
| Advanced Scopes → → → Named Scopes | |
| Add Scope Selected Item(s) | Configure Dynamic Indexing |
| Remove Scope Save as Named Scope | Additional Settings |

2 On the Query Builder, click the **Scope** Tab.

Fig. 288 Query Builder - Scope Tab

3 Double-click the **Analysis Options** icon.

The Analysis Options dialog appears.

| Additional Settings | × |
|--|------|
| Analysis Options | |
| Analysis Options Local analysis Network analysis Report groups Report users Skip logon workstations Skip child objects with like permissions Group Analysis | |
| Report members of all goups | |
| O Do not report members of these groups | |
| Group Names Domain Users | |
| OK Cancel | Help |

Fig. 289 Analysis Options dialog

Use this dialog to target specific analysis options for reporting on effective permissions. Choose from the following types of analysis options:

282 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

| | Local analysis Network analysis Report groups Report users Skip logon workstations Skip child objects with like permissions Report or not report members of all groups 4 Select the option you want to report on, and click OK. The analysis options you selected are added to the scope. For more information about this dialog, see the bv-Control for Windows Online Help. |
|--------------------------|---|
| Administrative Shares | The Administrative Shares Selection feature allows you to specify the administrative-equivalent share name when running queries that require remote disk access. By default, bv-Control for Windows uses the default administrative shares of target computers to gather data. In certain secure environments, it may be desirable to disable the default administrative shares. For these environments, there is the Administrative Shares Selection configuration. This feature allows the use of manually created, root-level shares that follow a pre-defined naming convention. You can also choose the option to auto-discover administrative shares, or use a combination of all methods. The rules you select will be applied to all queries. |
| | When you select the option to use a rule for naming the administrative shares, you must create the share at the root level with the names that follow these rules: |
| | equivalent right to the share. Use Machine Name Prefix - If this option is selected, you can use the machine name prefix as the rule for naming administrative shares. For example, if your computer is named TEST COMPUTER1, the share name for the C: drive should be 'TEST COMPUTER1C\$. This option is only available if you select to use a rule for naming administrative shares. Use Constant Prefix - You should select this option if you want to provide a constant prefix for the rule. This option is only available if you choose to use a rule for naming administrative shares. The share name for the volume will be the constant appended by the drive letter on which the share located (e.g., constantC\$). There are some invalid characters that cannot be used in the constant box. They are: *+:;[]\\\/?<>,= In addition, the constant cannot be all periods (i.e., it can be a.b, but it cannot be) |

• Auto Discover Administrative Shares - Select this option to allow bv-Control for Windows to auto discover by enumerating the root level shares on the volume and sorting the shares alphabetically, then selecting the first administrative share listed.

Communication Settings Communication Settings are settings that you configure for the Query Engine. These settings communicate to the Console how much requested data it will receive and at what intervals it will get the information.

• To set communication settings

1 Double-click the Communication Settings icon in the Console details pane.

The Communication Settings dialog appears.

| C | ommunication Settings | × |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| | Communication | |
| | Comm Buffer Size 10241 KB | |
| | Query Poll Interval 1 Sec | |
| | · | |
| | OK Cancel Help | |

Use this dialog to set the communication settings for the query engine.

Comm Buffer Size - This field limits the number of bytes the Console grants to a Query Engine during data collection. This settings prevents the Master Query Engine (MQE) from giving the Console more data than it can process.

Query Poll Interval - This field sets the time interval (in seconds) between each Console request from an MQE for data.

2 Set the desired settings and click **OK** to close the dialog.

Disk Space Settings

You can use bv-Control for Windows to set the amount of free disk space you want to be left over after you run queries. By using the Disk Space Settings dialog, you can set the minimum free disk space and specify the amount of time you want the disk space to recover before stopping the query.

To set the disk space settings

1 Double-click the Disk Space Settings icon in the Console details pane.

The **Disk Space Settings** dialog appears.

| Disk Space Settings | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--------|---------|------------------|
| 1 | Disk Space | | | |
| | Minimum Free Disk Space | 100 | ΜВ | |
| | Time Out Query After | 20 | Minutes | Restore Defaults |
| | |] | | |
| | | Conset | | - 1 |
| | UK | Lancei | Hei | P |

Fig. 290 Disk Space Settings dialog

In the **Minimum Free Disk Space** box, set the minimum free disk space to prevent the disk from running out of space when running queries with large result sets.

In **Time Out Query After** box, specify the amount of time you want the free disk space to recover before stopping the query.

Use the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the default settings.

2 Click **OK** to close the dialog.

| Health & Status Check | The Health & Status Check is a report that provides you with a status of the deployment of the bv-Control for Windows product. The Health & Status check queries the system by collecting configuration settings and gathering data on the status of the query engines. This report can be saved and emailed to Technical Support as needed. |
|--------------------------|---|
| | The following information is provided in the Heath & Status report: |
| | Client Version Summary |
| | Server Version Summary |
| | General Information Server Settings |
| | Enterprise Configuration Service |
| | |

- Master Query Engines
- Slave Query Engines
- Slave Query Engine Assignments
- Query Engine Communication Settings
- Distribution Rules
- Support Services
- Administrative Share Selection
- Connection Database(s)
- Default Connection Database
- User Connection Database Assignments
- User Options

• Domain/Workgroup Credential Configuration Summary

To run a Health & Status report

1 Double-click the Health & Status check icon in the details pane of the Console to query your system for the data.

Once data retrieval is finished, the report appears.

| In the series of the seri | Se H | lealth & Status Check | . 🗆 × |
|--|------|--|-------|
| Image: Client Additional Status Report for bv-Control for Windows Client Version Summary Product: bv-Control for Windows - Client Version: Version: 8.0.286 Service Pack: [None] Hotfix: [None] Errors: BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bvMTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 bVMTProp.dll 8.0.286.100 bVMTProp.dll 8.0.286.100 bVVMTProp.dll 8.0.286.100 bVVPtothmanagerUtis.dll 8.0.286.100 bVQEConfig.exe | File | Send by E-mail | |
| Client Version Summary Product: bv-Control for Windows - Client Version: Version: 8.0.286 Service Pack: [None] Hotfix: [None] Errors: BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCountv2kmisc.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTCpro.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQpiets.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQpiets.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTScop.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSysObjs.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTUninstall.exe 8.0.286.100 BVNTDinstall.exe 8.0.286.100 BVNTScop.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTDinstall.exe 8.0.286.100 BVNTScop.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQESONFG.exe 8.0.286.100 BVNTScop.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQESONFG.exe 8.0.286.100 BVGSUNFSC.exe 8 | | Health and Status Report for bv-Control for Windows | |
| Product: bv-Control for Windows - Client Version: Version: 8.0.286 Service Pack: [None] Hotfix: [None] Errors: BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCounteXems.cdll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTDbjects.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTDbjects.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTPcroz.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTPcroz.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTPcs22.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSsobjs.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSsobjs.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSsidjs.dll 8.0.286.100 BVPtchmangerUtis.dll 8.0.286.100 BVPatchMangerUtis.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEConfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe | | Client Version Summary | |
| Version: Version: 8.0.286 Service Pack: [None] Hotfix: [None] Errors: BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bvCountw2kmisc.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTCorsolEInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTDbjects.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQuery.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQscts.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEConfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.e | LE | Product: bv-Control for Windows - Client | |
| Errors: BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bVCountw2kmisc.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTCorsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTCorsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTObjects.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVPTUNinstall.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQEAdUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEConfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQECONFISC.exe 8.0.286.100 BVCECONFISC.exe 8.0.286.100 BVCECONFISC.exe 8.0.286.100 BVCECONFISC.exe 8.0.286.100 BVCECONFISC.exe 8.0.286.10 | | Version: Version: 8.0.286 Service Pack: [None] Hotfix: [None] | |
| BindView Information Server: Local File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bVMTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTOpiets.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTQuery.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTQuery.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTRpc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTRpc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTspc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTspc30.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTspc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTspc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVMTspc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe | | Errors: | |
| File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCount.exe 8.0.286.100 bVCountw2kmisc.dll 8.0.286.100 bVTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTCpror.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTDpjets.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQuery.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTQs22.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSpices.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSpices.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSpices.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSpices.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTspices.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTIninstall.exe 8.0.286.100 BVQEAUtHis.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQESconfig.exe 8.0.286.100 BVSTScopes.dll | | BindView Information Server: Local | |
| 8.0.286.100 ECSCommon.dll | • | File List: 8.0.286.100 bvCountexe 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTObjects.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTConsoleInterface.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTRpc32.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTSetup.dll 8.0.286.100 BVNTAIL.exe 8.0.286.100 BVPATAManagerUtils.dll 8.0.286.100 BVQESupportSvc.exe 8.0.286.100 BVVNTScopes.dll 8.0.286.100 BVVNTScopes.dll 8.0.286.100 ECSBase.dll 8.0.286.100 ECSBase.dll | |

Fig. 291 bv-Control for Windows Health & Status report

11 Using BindView Patch Deployment

| In This Chapter | Introduction | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|--|
| | Patch Assessment | |
| | Patch Packaging | |
| | Patch Deployment Console | |

| Introduction | This chapter describes the three BindView Patch Deployment components. First, it discusses the Patch Assessment Data Source and its unique scoping features. Next, it describes how to use Patch Packaging to create a Patch Package to deploy. Finally, it describes the separate Patch Deployment Console. |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Patch Assessment | BindView Patch Deployment works as a feature of the bv-Control for Windows snap-in module. In order to perform a package or deploy a patch, you first perform a specialized bv-Control for Windows query in the Patch Assessment data source. The results of the Patch Assessment query are used to create the patch package or to deploy the needed patch or patches. |
| | Caution: You must perform at least one Patch Assessment query before you can use the Patch Packaging wizard or the Patch Deployment Console. If you have not performed a Patch Assessment query, you will not be able to select any patches to package using the Patch Packaging wizard, and an error will appear if you start the Patch Deployment Console. |
| | Before you can perform a Patch Assessment query, you must first configure bv-Control for Windows. If you have not yet done so, please see "Configuring bv-Control for Windows" on page 40 |
| Patch Assessment Data Source | When you install a version of bv-Control for Windows that includes BindView Patch Deployment, the Patch Assessment Data Source appears in the Select Data Source dialog grouped with the bv-Control for Windows and Web Services data sources. You create a query in the Patch Assessment data source in the same way you create any other bv-Control for Windows query. |
| | Queries in the Patch Assessment Data Source have a unique Advanced Scope Option dialog. When you perform a query in the Patch Assessment Data Source, you have the option to store the results with the query normally. In addition, the query results are automatically stored in a separate database for the Patch Packaging wizard and the Patch Deployment Console to use. You use the Patch Deployment Configuration Options to control the behavior of this database and to set your preference for when the BindView Patch Deployment Console will check for new patch description files. |
Patch Assessment Scoping

Queries in the Patch Assessment data source are identical to other queries in the bv-Control for Windows module, with the exception of the Advanced Scope options. When you create a query, click the **Scope** tab to view the Scope page.

| Query Builder - Untitled by-Control for Windows and Web Services Patch Assessment Query | X |
|--|---|
| Field Specification Filter Specification Scope Available Item(s) Image: Scope Image: Scope Image: Scope Image: Scope | |
| | |
| Add Scope Configure Dynamic Indexing | |
| Selected Item(s) | |
| Default Remove Scope Save as Named Scope Additional Settings | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 292 Query Build with Scope Tab Selected

When you add an item from the **Microsoft Windows Network**, **Active Directory**, or **Advanced Scopes** containers to the scope,

| omain I | Machine | | |
|---|-------------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| | | | |
| Record Status Filtering | | | |
| Show Missing Patches | 3 | • | Show Notes |
| 🔽 Show Missing Service | Packs | ☑ | Show Installed Patches |
| 🔽 Show Warnings | | ☑ | Show Effectively Installed Patches |
| Show Informational M | essages | | |
| Calculate Checksums | | | |
| Patch Filtering Options | | | |
| Check for all Patches | for all Products | | |
| C Check for Patches for | a Product or Serv | vice | Pack: Select Product |
| C Check for Patches for | One or More Bull | letin | s: Select Bulletins |
| Current Selection: All Pat | ches | | |

the **Default Scope** is removed and the **Additional Settings** dialog appears.

Fig. 293 Additional Settings Dialog

The **Additional Settings** dialog allows you to specify exactly what information the query should collect. The content of this dialog can vary slightly, depending on what type of object you selected from the **Microsoft Windows Network**, **Active Directory**, or **Advanced Scopes** containers.

The top of the dialog allows you to specify the object to add to the scope. Use the **Domain**, **Workgroup**, **Machine**, and **Container** fields to specify the object to add. Which of these options appears depends on the type of object you selected.

The **Record Status Filtering** group allows you to filter the results of a query based on the content of the **Status** field in the Patch Assessment data source. The Status field may be one of the fields in the Field Specification for the query, but it is not required to filter on the Record Status. Only records that match one of the status types selected will appear in the query results.

Use **Record Status Filtering** in the Scope tab instead of using the Filter Specification tab to greatly enhance the speed of processing queries. Records which do not match the Scope will be discarded by the bv-Control for Windows Query Engine, and will not be transferred to the BindView Information Server.

Table 8 lists the record types and the information each displays in the Query Results

| Status Type | When selected, the results will include |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Show Missing Patches | Patches that are not found on target machines. |
| Show Missing Service Packs | Service packs that are not found on target machines. |
| Show Warnings | Warnings generated during the scanning process. |
| Show Informational Messages | Informational messages generated during the scanning process. |
| Show Notes | Notes generated during the scanning process. |
| Show Installed Patches | Installed patches found on target machines. |
| Show Effectively Installed Patches | Patches which are effectively installed (because a patch or service pack which supersedes them has been installed). |

 Table 8 Record Status Filtering Options

When **Calculate Checksums** is selected, BindView Patch Deployment compares both the checksum and version number of files on a target machine with the checksum and version number of the same file in the patch distributed by the manufacturer. Patches will be marked as found on a machine only if both the version number and checksum of the files match the version number and checksum of the files in the patch package distributed by Microsoft. Because the checksum is calculated on the bv-Control for Windows Query Engine, every byte in a file on which a checksum is being performed must be read across the network. Using checksums is much slower than using version numbers only, especially when the Query Engine must communicate via slow links to a remote machine.

The Patch Filtering Options allow you to choose whether all patches for all products should be scanned, or only specific patches.

When **Check for all Patches for all Products** is selected, all patches for all products will be included in the query.

When **Check for Patches for a Product or Service Pack** is selected, only patches for the product you select when you click **Select Product** will be included

When **Check for Patches for One or More Bulletins** is selected, only the patches contained in the bulletins you select when you click Select Bulletins will be included. When you scope to a bulletin for a product or service pack, some bulletins may apply to more than one product. All products mentioned in multi-product bulletins will appear in query results, even if some of the products were not in the query scope.

When you click **OK** the scope is added to the query with the options you have selected.

Patch DeploymentThe PatchConfigurationoptions for
results in

The Patch Deployment Configuration Options dialog is used to set options for the database of Patch Assessment query results. The results in this database are used by the Patch Packaging wizard and the BindView Patch Deployment Console. In addition, the dialog lets you control how often the BindView Patch Deployment Console checks for new patch description files.

The Patch Deployment Configuration Options are set by each user and affect only that user. No user or administrator can set preferences for another user, and no user can view or use another user's Patch Assessment query results database.

To set patch deployment configuration options

1 If it is not open already, open the BindView RMS Console and select the **Patch Deployment** item in the Console Tree. The Patch Deployment details pane appears.

| 🚡 BindView - [BindView RMS\bv-Control for W | indows and Web Services\Patch | Deployment] |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 🚡 File Action View Window Help | | _B× |
| ← → 🗈 🖬 🔮 🖧 🚼 🦉 | 😰 🚯 🖄 | |
| BindView RMS | Patch Deployment | |
| Kisk Assessment and Control | Name A | Description |
| Exported Files Regulation DMS Configuration | BPatch Assessment and Packag | Package and deploy patches |
| Binuview RMS Configuration | Configuration | Patch Deployment User Settings |
| | Patch Deployment Console | Launches the Patch Deployment Console to deploy patches |
| 🗄 🤔 RapidFire Updates | | |
| 🗄 🍓 by-Control for Windows and Web Services | | |
| ⊕ Configuration | | |
| H- | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| 1 Þ | | |
| | | |

Fig. 294 Patch Deployment Details Pane

2 Double-click **Configuration** in the details pane. The **Patch Deployment Configuration** dialog appears.

| Patch Deployment Configuration - GRAIN\chaber | × |
|--|---|
| ✓ Only Display Patch Assessment results for queries from the past 30 + days. | |
| Enable BindView Patch Deployment results storage | |
| Jet Database File Options II Archive historical system patch data files greater than: 2000 MB (Max 2000) Archive Now | |
| ✓ Always check for new meta-documents when starting the BindView Patch Deployment Console. | |
| Meta-Document Update | |
| Update Now Click the 'Update Now' button to update the meta-documents for the BindView Patch Packager and BindView Patch Assessment. The BindView Patch Deployment Console will be updated the next time it is opened. | |
| OK Cancel Help | |

Fig. 295 Patch Deployment Configuration Dialog

3 Make any needed changes to the settings.

Only Display Patch Assessment results for queries from the past... days controls the age of Patch Assessment results in the Patch Assessment folder. Only Patch Assessment queries performed more recently than this age appear in the Patch Assessment folder.

When **Enable BindView Patch Deployment results storage** is selected, results from queries in the Patch Assessment data source will be stored in a Jet database for the BindView Patch Deployment Console and the Patch Packaging wizard to use.

Archive historical system patch data files greater than ... MB (Max 2000) Specifies the maximum amount of system patch data to store in the Jet database. When the Jet database reaches this maximum size, all older data will be archived and a new database will be started. The initial size of the new database will be 0 MB. The database will grow over time to the limit you set. Each time the limit is reached, the database will be archived and another new database will be started.

When **Archive Now** is clicked, all existing data in the Jet database will be immediately archived and a new database will be started. The initial size of the database will be 0 MB, but the database size will grow to the limit you set.

When **Always check for new patch descriptions when starting the BindView Patch Deployment Console** is checked, the BindView Patch Deployment Console will check for new versions of the files that describe patches whenever it starts.

Click **Update Now** to immediately update the patch description files used by the Patch Assessment data source. To use this update feature, the machine you are running the BindView RMS Console on must be able to connect to the BindView web site. **4** When you have made changes to the settings, click **OK** to close the dialog and save the changes you have made.

Patch Packaging After you have performed one or more Patch Assessment Queries, you can view the results and choose to create a "package" with one or more patches to distribute to target machines using a third-party tool. You must run at least one query in the Patch Assessment datasource to use the Patch packaging wizard.

Viewing Patch Assessment Results The BindView RMS Console has the ability to store query results with the query if you choose. In addition to this, BindView Patch Deployment stores query results from every Patch Assessment query you perform in its own database. The Patch Packaging wizard uses this database to create patch packages.

If you choose, you can view the results of these queries.

► To view patch assessment query results

- 1 If you have not done so before, create and run a query in the Patch Assessment data source. The Field Specification is not important for the Patch Packaging wizard, but you should use the Filter Specification and Scope to ensure that the query collects the information you choose.
- **2** When the query is complete, close the query's result set grid. If you choose, you may save the query's results along with the query, but this is not necessary.
- **3** Select the **Patch Deployment** item in the BindView RMS Console Tree. The Patch Deployment details pane appears.



Fig. 296 Patch Deployment Details Pane

4 Double-click the **Patch Assessment and Packaging** item. The **Patch Assessment Results** item appears in the details pane.

| 📸 BindView - [BindView RM5\bv-Control for W | indows and Web Services\Patch | Deployment\Patch Assessme | nt and Packaging] | |
|---|--------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------|
| 📸 File Action View Window Help | | | | _ 8 × |
| (← → 🗈 📧 🕄 🗟 🚼 🦉 🍋 | 😰 🚯 🖄 | | | |
| BindView RMS | Patch Assessment and Packaging | | | |
| Risk Assessment and Control | Name 🛆 | Description | | |
| ⊕ Gai Exported Files Gai BridWar RMS Configuration ⊕ Gai Schedules ⊕ Gai Named Scopes ⊕ RapidFire Updates ⊕ Gai Configuration ⊕ Gai Patch Deployment ⊕ Gai Patch Assessment and Packaging | ₩Patch Assessment Results | Scanned results of patches | | |
| |] | | | |

Fig. 297 Patch Packaging Details Pane

5 Double-click the **Patch Assessment Results** item. The details pane displays a record for each day you have performed a Patch Assessment query.





6 Double-click any day to display the queries you performed that day.





11: Using BindView Patch Deployment 295

7 Double-click any result set to display it. A summary of the patches found listed by patch appears. Patches are listed in the upper right section of the details pane. A summary of the results of the Patch Assessment query is in the lower details pane.

| BindView - [BindView RMS\by-Control for W | /indows and Web Services\Patc | h Deployment' | Patch Assess | ment and Packaging\I | Patch Asse | essment Res | ults\0 | |
|---|--|--------------------|----------------------|--|----------------|-------------|--------------|---|
| | ŝ) | | | | | | | |
| BindView RMS | 02:14:36 PM | | | 1 | , | | | |
| Kisk Hissessment and Control | 04-30-2004 02:14:36 PM Summary by Patch DOC WILLEAT WORD | QNumber Q330008 | Item MS02-059 | Excel 2002 | Installed 0 | Effectiv | Missing 0 | <u>{</u> • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • |
| | DUC-WHEAT-W2K3 | Q330008 | MS02-059 MS02-067 | Word 2002 Outlook 2002 | 0 0 | 1 1 | 0 0 | |
| RapidFire Updates | | Q812262 | MS03-003 MS03-020 | Outlook 2002 Internet Explorer 6.0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | r r |
| Configuration Patch Deployment | | Q819639 | MS03-021 MS03-023 | Windows Media Play Windows Server 200 | 1 | 0 | 0 | |
| Patch Assessment and Packaging | | Q819696 | MS03-026 MS03-030 | Windows Server 200 Windows Server 200 | 1 | 0 | 0 | |
| 04-29-2004 | | Q815495 | MS03-031 MS03-032 | Internet Explorer 6.0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | ▶ |
| 02:14:36 PM | | | | | | | | |
| ⊕ ⊕ 01:50:40 PM ⊕ 01:49:33 PM | 🔞 Scan Summary | | | | | | | |
| 🕀 🚯 01:48:08 PM 🕀 🌄 01:47:54 PM | G Machines Scanned | i: 1 | | Scan Date | : 04-30- | 2004 02:1 | 4:36 PM | |
| 臣- 📸 01:46:39 PM 臣- 📸 01:46:06 PM | Machines Not Sca | nned: 0 | | | XML V | ersion: 1. | 1.1.998 | |
| ⊕ ∰ 01:44:55 PM ⊕ 01:44:55 PM ⊕ 01:44:55 PM | X Missing Patches: 1 | | | | | | | |
| i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i | Patches Found: 28 | 3 | | | | | _ | |
| | 1 | | | | | | | <u>•</u> |

Fig. 300 Patch Assessment Results Details

8 For information on a particular patch, select it. The details pane displays information about the patch, including the severity assigned to it by Microsoft, its ID and Microsoft Q-number, and the Microsoft Bulletin ID that refers to it.



Fig. 301 Patch Details Pane

9 Select a machine name in the tree to display a summary of the machine's patch status, which appears in the lower details pane. The patches found on the machine or missing from the machine are listed in the top right frame of the details pane.

| | | | | | | <u></u> |
|--|--|--|---|------------------|--|--|
| 🔿 🗈 📧 😫 📰 🦉 🐿 😰 🗞 | 2) | | | | | |
| BindView RMS | 02:14:36 PM | | | | | |
| Risk Assessment and Control | 04-30-2004 02:14:36 PM | Type | Item | QNumber | Severity | Product |
| Exported Files | Summary by Patch | S Effectively Installed | MS03-003 | 0812262 | Moderate | Outlook 2002 |
| BindView RMS Configuration | DOC-WHEAT-W2K3 | Seffectively Installed | MS02-067 | Q331866 | Moderate | Outlook 2002 |
| Named Scoper | | Strectively Installed | MS03-020 | Q818529 | Moderate | Internet Explorer 6.0 for Win |
| RapidEire LIndates | | Strectively Installed | MS02-059 | Q330008 | Moderate | Excel 2002 |
| by-Control for Windows and Web Services | | Strectively Installed | MS03-035 | Q824934 | Important | Word 2002 |
| 🗄 🎆 Configuration | | Strectively Installed | MS02-059 | Q330008 | Moderate | Word 2002 |
| 🗄 🔯 Patch Deployment | | Strectively Installed | MS04-006 | Q830352 | Important | Windows Server 2003, Star |
| 🖃 🍘 Patch Assessment and Packaging | | Informational Item | MS03-030 | Q819696 | Critical | Windows Server 2003, Star |
| 🖻 📑 Patch Assessment Results | | informational Item | PowerPoint | . SP2 | | PowerPoint 2002 |
| 04-28-2004 | | X Missing Patch | MS03-036 | Q824938 | Important | Office XP |
| • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | | Patch Found | MS04-012 | Q828741 | Critical | Windows Server 2003, Star |
| | 1 | • | | Norodo Constalla | | |
| 🔃 🌄 01:47:54 PM | Scan Machine: DC | C-WHEAT-W2K3 | | | 🐴 Missin | g Service Packs = 1 |
| | Scan Machine: DO | DC-WHEAT-W2K3 | | | 🐴 Missin 🗙 I | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 |
| (1:47:54 PM (1:46:39 PM (1:46:39 PM (1:46:06 PM (1:44:55 PM | Scan Machine: DO | DC-WHEAT-W2K3 30.10.57 | | | And Missin X ✓ | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 |
| B → 01:47:54 PM B → 01:46:05 PM B → 01:46:05 PM B → 01:44:55 PM B → 01:44:55 PM B → 01:44:55 PM B → 01:44:15 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products | DC-WHEAT-W2K3 30.10.57 | ✔ P4 F | atches 🗙 | A Missin X V Missing Patches | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 A Missing Service Packs |
| Image: Second | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 | DC-WHEAT-W2K3 | ✔ Pa F 0 | atches 🗙 ound | A Missin Missing Patches | ng Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Missing Service Packs 0 |
| 01+039 PM 01+039 PM 01+039 PM 01+0405 PM 01+0455 PM 01+0455 PM 01+0455 PM 01+04155 PM 01+04159 PM 01+04159 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 | IC-WHEAT-W2K3 30.10.57 | Pa F 0 | atches 🗙 ound | A Missin Missing Patches 0 | ng Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Missing Service Packs 0 0 |
| 0:147.54 PM 0:147.53 PM 0:146:35 PM 0:144:55 PM 0:144:55 PM 0:144:55 PM 0:144:55 PM 0:144:19 PM 0:141:19 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 | IC-WHEAT-W2K3 | P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P | atches 💥 | A Missin Missing Patches 0 0 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Missing Service Packs 0 0 0 |
| 0:147.54 PM 0:146.39 PM 0:146.06 PM 0:144.55 PM 0:144.55 PM 0:144.55 PM 0:144.55 PM 0:141.19 PM 0:41.19 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10,20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 Internet Explorer 6.0 | 10WHEAT-W2K3 30.10.57 For Windows Server 2003 | P P F 0 1 2 5 | atches 🗙 | A Missin Missing Patches 0 0 0 0 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Missing Service Packs 0 0 0 0 |
| ⊕ 0:147:54 PM ⊕ 0:146:39 PM ⊕ 0:146:06 PM ⊕ 0:144:55 PM ⊕ 0:144:55 PM ⊕ 0:144:55 PM ⊕ 0:144:51 PM ⊕ 0:141:19 PM ⊕ 0:141:19 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 Intermet Explorer 6.01 MDAC 2.8 | 10 - WHEAT - W2K3 30.10.57 For Windows Server 2003 | P: F 0 1 1 2 5 1 | atches 🗙 | A Missin Missing Patches 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Nissing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Packs 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 |
| ⊕ ● | Scan Machine: DO Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 Internet Explorer 6.0 1 MDAC 2.8 Office XP | 1C - WHEAT - W2K3 30, 10, 57 for Windows Server 2003 | P, F 0 1 2 5 1 1 | atches 🗙 | A Missin Missing Patches 0 0 0 0 1 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Nissing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 M Missing Service Packs 0 0 0 0 0 1 |
| B → 01:47:54 PM B → 01:46:39 PM C → 01:46:36 PM C → 01:44:55 PM C → 01:44:55 PM D → 01:44:55 PM D → 01:44:55 PM D → 01:41:19 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10.20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 Internet Explorer 6.0 MDAC 2.8 Office XP Outlook 2002 | 10 - WHEAT-W2K3 30.10.57 For Windows Server 2003 | Pr 0 1 2 5 1 1 3 | atches 🗙 | A Missin Missing Patches 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Missing := 1 Patches Found: = 35 Missing Service Packs 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 |
| 01:46:39 PM 01:46:06 PM 01:46:06 PM 01:455 PM 01:455 PM 01:41:55 PM 01:41:19 PM 01:41:19 PM | Scan Machine: DC Domain: GRAIN T IP Address: 10,20 Installed Products .NET Framework 1.1 Access 2002 Excel 2002 Internet Explorer 6.0 NDAC 2.8 Office XP Outlook 2002 PowerPoint 2002 | 10 - WHEAT-W2K3 10 . 10 . 57 for Windows Server 2003 | Pr F 0 1 1 2 5 1 1 3 3 0 | stches X | As Missin As Antice Antice Missing Patches 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 | g Service Packs = 1 Patches Nissing: = 1 Patches Found: = 35 Packs |

Fig. 302 Machine Patch Summary

- **10** For information on a particular patch, select it and the Patch Details pane appears (Fig. 301 on page 296).
- **11** For a list of the machines scanned as part of the Patch Assessment query, select the query results (labeled with the date and time of the query) in the top left pane. A list of all the

machines that were scanned as part of the patch assessment query appears.

| 🚡 BindView - [BindView RMS\bv-Control for V | /indows and Web Services\Patcl | h Deployment\Patch # | Assessment an | id Packaging | \Patch Assessme | nt Results\0 | |
|---|---|----------------------------|--|--------------------------|--|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 📸 File Action View Window Help | | | | | | | _B× |
| ← → 🗈 📧 🔮 📰 🦉 🐿 | 2 1 | | | | | | |
| 🖳 BindView RMS | 02:14:19 PM | | | | | | |
| ⊕ • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • | Odd 00-2004 02 14:13 PM Odd 00-2014 03 PM Odd 00-2014 03 PM Odd 00-2014 04:00 Odd 00-2014 Odd 00-2014 Odd 00-2014 Odd 00-2014 Odd 00-2014 | Computer | IP Address 10.200.10.99 10.200.10.57 | Domain GRAIN GRAIN | Language 1 English (def English (def | Missing Service 2 1 | Packs Mis 1 1 |
| 0 07 25 - 2004 0 07 25 - 2004 0 08 02 - 214:36 PM 0 02 - 214:36 PM 0 03 - 0150:40 PM 0 03 - 0150:40 PM 0 03 - 0150:40 PM 0 03 - 0150:40 PM | 👰 Scan Summary | | | | | | |
| B 0 1-1030 PH C 1-1030 PH C 1-1030 PH C 1-1030 PH C 1-1040 PH C 1-1460 PH C 1-144-55 PM C 1-144-55 PM C 1-144-55 PM C 1-141-19 PM C 1-141-19 PM C 1-141-19 PM | Machines Scanned Machines Not Scan Missing Service Patholic Patholic Missing Patches: 2 Patches Found: 76 | l: 2 aned: 0 acks: 3 | | Scan Dat | te: 04-30-2004 XML Version | 02:14:19 PM | |
| | J | | | | | | |

Fig. 303 List of Machines in a Query

12 Select one of the machines to display the Machine Patch Summary (Fig. 302 on page 297).

Once you have viewed the results of a Patch Assessment query, you can use the results to create a Patch Package or to deploy patches using the Patch Deployment Console.

Patch Packages

A Patch Package is a collection of one or more executable patch files downloaded by the Patch Packaging wizard together with a batch file that automatically installs the patches. The BindView Patch Packaging wizard automatically downloads the files from the Microsoft Web site or from a location you specify on your intranet, and creates the package. The accompanying batch file specifies the correct order for the patches to execute and the options to use when installing the patches.

Once the wizard has created the package, you use a third-party tool to transfer each Patch Package to the correct target machine and run the package batch file. When the patches have been installed, the patch package on the target machine can be deleted.

Creating a Patch Package

You use the Patch Packaging wizard to specify package options and create a patch package.

To create a Patch Package

1 If it is not open already, open the BindView RMS Console and select the **Patch Deployment** item in the Console Tree. The Patch Deployment details pane appears.

| 🚡 Bind¥iew - [Bind¥iew RMS\bv-Control for W | indows and Web Services\Patch | Deployment] |
|---|--|---|
| 📸 File Action View Window Help | | _ ® × |
| | 😰 🇄 🖄 | |
| BindView RMS | Patch Deployment | |
| Risk Assessment and Control | Name 🛆 | Description |
| Exported Files BrdView RMS Configuration Monet Scopes RapidFire Updates Gonfiguration Gonfiguration Gonfiguration Gonfiguration Gonfiguration | Patch Assessment and Packag Configuration Patch Deployment Console | Package and deploy patches Patch Deployment User Settings Launches the Patch Deployment Console to deploy patches |
| | , | |

Fig. 304 Patch Deployment Details Pane

- 2 Locate and view the results of any Patch Assessment query you have performed. For more information on viewing the results of a query, please see "To view patch assessment query results" on page 294.
- **3** There are several ways to select the patches to package.

To select one or more machines and create a unique package for each machine with all missing patches, click the query results (labeled with the date and time of the query) in the top left pane. A list of all the machines that were scanned as part of the patch assessment query appears (Fig. 302 on page 297). Select one or more machines and right-click. The **Patch Machines** menu appears.

Choose **Create Patch Packages for Selected Machines**, then choose **All Missing Patches** or **Based on Microsoft Severity** and choose a severity level. The **Select a Deployment Template** panel of the Patch Packaging wizard appears (Fig. 305 on page 300).

To select one or more patches and create a unique package for each machine missing the patch or patches, select one or more patches in the Patch Assessment Results Details and right-click. The **Patch** menu appears.

Choose **Create Package**, then **Selected Patch(es)**. The **Select a Deployment Template** panel of the Patch Packaging wizard appears (Fig. 305 on page 300).

Select One or More Machines

Select One or More Patches Select a Single Patch

Create a Set of Packages To select a single patch and create a single package usable on every machine missing the patch, select that single patch in the Patch Assessment Results Details and right-click. The **Patch** menu appears.

Choose **Create Package**, then **Selected Patch(es)**. The **Select a Deployment Template** panel of the Patch Packaging wizard appears (Fig. 305).

To create a set of packages that update every missing patch on all machines, click **Summary by Patch**. A list of all patches detected and all missing patches appears. Select any patch and right-click. The **Patch** menu appears.

Choose **Create Package**, then **All Missing Patches** or **Based on Microsoft Severity** and choose a severity level. The **Select a Deployment Template** panel of the Patch Packaging wizard appears (Fig. 305).

| Patch P | Packaging Wizard | | × |
|---------|---|---|-------------------------|
| Sel | ect a Deployment Ten Click on the drop-down lis an existing template or cre | uplate it to select a different template. Yo eate a new one. | ou can modify or delete |
| | Template Name: Stand | ard | Create New Delete |
| | Deployment Options R | eboot Options Office Options | |
| | | | |
| | Before | During | After |
| | 🔲 Shut down SQL | 🔽 Backup files for uninstall | 🗖 Remove Temp Files |
| | 🔲 Shut down IIS | 🔽 Quiet mode | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | < Back Next > | Cancel Help |

Fig. 305 Select a Deployment Template Panel

4 The Select a Deployment Template panel allows you to control the options used when deploying the patch or patches. A deployment template is a set of options stored for later reuse. One template, called "Standard" is included. To create your own template, click Create New. The Create New Template dialog appears.

| reate New Templa | ate | × |
|--------------------|--------|---|
| Enter Template Nam | ie: | |
| 1 | | |
| | Cancel | |
| | | |

Fig. 306 Create New Template Dialog

5 Enter a name for the template and click **OK**. The **Select a Deployment Template** panel reappears with the new template selected.

| Patch Pa | Patch Packaging Wizard | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------------------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Select a Deployment Template Click on the drop-down list to select a different template. You can modify or delete an existing template or create a new one. | | | | | | | | |
| Т | Template Name: Simple Template Create New Delete | | | | | | | |
| | Deployment Options | eboot Options Office Options | | | | | | |
| | Before | During | After | | | | | |
| | Shut down IIS | Quiet mode | neniove renipriles | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | < Back Next > | Cancel Help | | | | | |

Fig. 307 Select a Deployment Template Panel with New Template

6 Set the deployment template options you wish to use from the **Deployment Options**, **Reboot Options**, and **Office Options** tabs. Make any needed changes to the settings.

Deployment OptionsWhen you select Shut down SQL, the Microsoft SQL Server
will be shut down before deployment.

When you select **Shut down IIS**, the Microsoft Internet Information Server will be shut down before deployment.

When you select **Back up files for uninstall**, files the patch replaces will be backed up so the patch can be uninstalled.

When **Quiet mode** is selected, the patch will happen "silently," with no user interaction.

When you select **Remove temp files**, any temporary files the patch creates while it is being deployed will be deleted when the deployment is complete.

Reboot Options When **No reboot** is selected, the target computer will not reboot when the deployment is complete. The patch may not be completely installed until the next time the computer is rebooted manually.

When **Reboot immediately after deployment** is selected, the target computer will be rebooted immediately when the installation is complete. If a user is logged in, they will be given a chance to save their work in progress.

Office OptionsMicrosoft Office patches are handled differently from other
patches. Microsoft Office patches require the original CD media,

because the patches are not complete files. Instead, the patch represents only the differences required to modify the original file with the patched code.

Administrative Installation Point - Administrators can create an Office Administrative Install Point (AIP) and then install Office on client machines from this location. Hotfixes can then be installed to the AIP, and the remote client machines can then be told to "update" their installations from the AIP. The update process really means re-installing all of Office on each machine - everything on the AIP will then get copied down to the remote machine.

The install point is technically nothing more than a network share of the requisite files, with special setup commands.

In the Administrative Installation Point field, enter the full UNC path to the Office AIP MSI file. For example,

\\officeserver\office\proplus.msi. Press the Set Credentials button to provide credentials for the remote machine to access the UNC location.

If you specify an AIP for Office patches, then when you choose to install any Office patches using this deployment template the machine being patched will synchronize with the specified Office AIP.

Push patches to each machine - Patches will be deployed directly to remote Office clients.

Push full-file patches when possible - When possible, you should elect to push full-file patches to the remote machines and specify a static location for Office media. Otherwise, not all Office patches will be successfully deployed.

Path to original installation media - Specify a UNC path to the original installation media used to install a specific version of Office. For example, \\corpserver\office. Press the Set Credentials button to provide credentials for the remote machine to access the UNC location. Office installations may fail unless the remote machine has access to the original installation media. **7** To continue, click **Next**. The **Package Generation Options** panel appears.

| Patch Packaging Wizard |
|---|
| Package Generation Options Select how the package should be generated. |
| Create one folder for each machine. All needed patches and supporting files will be copied to a folder for each machine. |
| C Use a single shared directory you specify for all patches needed by all machines. This option saves file space by sharing patches between multiple |
| Shared Folder Name: |
| A second batch file is created as part of the package. This batch file will copy (pull) the patches from the designated directory. |
| Creates a folder with the files needed to deploy a single patch. A list of machines missing the patch is stored with the folder. |
| |
| < Back Next > Cancel Help |

Fig. 308 Package Generation Options Panel

8 The **Package Generation Options** panel allows you to specify how the package should be generated.

For all types of packages, you can specify that the Patch Packaging Wizard should create a patch package folder for each machine or share one folder for all patches used by all machines. If you are creating a package from a single patch, you can also create a single folder with a list of the machines that patch is valid for.

Choose how the patch packages should be created and click **Next** to continue. The **Package Configuration** panel appears.

| Patch Packaging Wizard | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Package Configuration Specify the location and naming format for patches and the batch files used to deploy them. | | | | | | | |
| Select a folder where packages will be saved. | | | | | | | |
| Folder Name: \RMS\Data\GRAIN_chaber\PatchDeployment\PatchPackages | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Select a naming format to use for folders and batch files. | | | | | | | |
| Package Name: XMACHINE% | | | | | | | |
| Example: MYW2KSERVER_100.10.10.100_10-05-2003 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| < Back Next > Cancel Help | | | | | | | |

Fig. 309 Package Configuration Panel

9 Enter the path to a local directory or UNC path where the Patch Packages should be saved, or click the browse (...) button and select the location, then select a naming format to use for the Patch Package folders and batch files from the Package Name drop-down list. You can type in the Package Name field to edit the name. When creating multiple packages, you should always leave the %MACHINENAME% or %IPADDRESS% variable in the Package Name to uniquely identify the machine the package belongs to. Click Next to continue. The Inside Each Package panel appears.

| Patch Packaging Wizard | × |
|---|---|
| Inside Each Package Specify package configuration settings. | |
| For each package, Batch files will be created to deploy the patches. Specify the location on target machines where the patch files should be run. The patch file must be copied to this location before running the associated batch file. | |
| Folder Name | |
| For patch files to be deployed in each package, specify Patch Names | - |
| Always use original patch name. | |
| Choose a naming format for the downloaded patches | |
| File Name: %SQNumber% | |
| Example: Q100100 | |
| | |
| < Back Next > Cancel Heip | |

Fig. 310 Inside Each Package Panel

10 The Inside Each Package panel allows you to control where the patches that make up a package run on target computers, and to choose a naming format for the patch files and folders. A folder will be created for each Patch Package with the files needed to install the patches the package contains. Use a third-party tool to copy the folder and its contents to the target machine and execute the patch package batch file in the folder.

Enter a path or an environment variable for the Patch Package folder in the **Folder Name** field, and choose a naming format for the patch files from the **File Name** drop-down list, or select **Always use original patch name** to use the name supplied by Microsoft for the patch file. Click **Next** to continue. The **Package Summary** panel appears, listing the patches to be created.

| Patch Packaging Wizard |
|--|
| Package Summary Patch Packages will be generated for the following machines. Click 'Next' to continue. |
| SP2 (.NET Framework SP2) |
| |
| < Back Next > Cancel Help |

Fig. 311 Package Summary Panel

11 Click Next to continue. The Completing the Patch Packaging Wizard panel appears. When you're ready to continue, click Start. The Prepare to Download panel appears.

| 🚸 Pate | ch Packaging Wizard | | | × | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|------|--|--|--|
| Prepare to Download The following patches are to be downloaded to the local system. Click 'Next' to proceed. | | | | | | | |
| | Patch File | Exists Locally | URL Status | Size | | | |
| | .NET_Framework_SP2.exe | No | Found | 6MB | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | , 🔲 Always Download all pato | hes from Microsoft website. | | | | | |
| | Retrieve all patches from | an alternate location | | | | | |
| | Folder Name: | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | < Back Next > | Cancel | Help | | | |



12 The **Prepare to Download** panel and the remaining panels in the Patch Packaging wizard are part of a separate utility.

Exactly how long patch downloads take to complete depends on the speed of your network connection, network congestion, and the amount of information to be downloaded. The download portion of the wizard runs separately from the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows. This allows you to close the BindView RMS Console while the Patch Packaging Wizard downloads the selected patch files.

Note: Potentially, patch downloads could take up to several hours to complete.

You can specify the location the Patch Packaging wizard downloads the patches from.

- With both options unselected, the Patch Packaging wizard checks its cache first, then downloads the file from Microsoft if the Web version is newer than one in the cache.
- With **Always Download all patches from Microsoft website** selected, the wizard will always download the patches directly from Microsoft, ignoring the cache.
- With **Retrieve all patches from an intranet location** selected, the wizard downloads the patch files from an intranet location you specify. Retrieving the files from an intranet location allows you to package patches if your network configuration does not allow direct communications with the Microsoft website.

Patches you download to your intranet must be saved with the exact name Microsoft provides. The Patch Packaging wizard uses this name to locate the patches. Service Packs must be renamed, since service packs can share filenames in Microsoft's system. When you download a service pack, you should rename it using the pattern:

ProductName_ServicePack.exe

Thus, SP3 for MDAC 2.5 becomes MDAC_2.5_SP3.exe, and SP4 for Windows Media Player for Windows XP becomes Windows_Media_Player_for_Windows_XP_SP1.exe.

When you have chosen your options, click **Next** to continue. You will be prompted to confirm that you wish to continue. **13** Click **Yes** to continue, and the patch or patches you selected will be downloaded. A progress dialog will appear while the files are downloaded.

| 🚸 Patch Packaging Wizard | | | | × |
|--|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|------|
| Prepare to Download The following patches are proceed. | e to be downloaded t | o the local syst | tem. Click 'Next' to | |
| Patch File | | Status | | |
| .NET_Framework_SP2.ex | е | Finished. | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| Downloading: | | | | |
| Total Task: (6749K of 6749K) | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | < Back | Next> | Cancel | Help |
| | | | | |

Fig. 313 Patch Download Progress

14 When the download is complete, click Next to continue. The Completing the Patch Downloading and Packaging Wizard panel appears. Click Finish to complete the wizard.

You can now use a third-party tool of your choice to deploy the patch packages to the target machines. The Patch Packages to deploy are in the location you specified in the Patch Packaging wizard. You should transfer the entire Patch Package folder to the target machine, and execute the batch file in the folder on the target machine.

| Patch Deployment Console | The Patch Deployment Console is a stand-alone console that packages and deploys packages to target machines. The Patch Deployment Console uses the Patch Assessment query results to create patches and deploy them to machines. You must perform at least one Patch Assessment query before you can use the Patch Deployment Console. | | | |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| | This section describes how to start the BindView Patch Deployment Console, view Patch Assessment query results, and deploy patches. For additional information on the Patch Deployment Console, please see the BindView Patch Deployment Console Help. | | | |
| Launching the Patch Deployment Console | You must use the BindView RMS Console (with bv-Control for Windows installed) to start the Patch Deployment Console. | | | |
| ► | To start the BindView Patch Deployment Console | | | |
| | 1 If it is not open, open the BindView RMS Console and select Patch Deployment in the Console Tree. | | | |
| | The Patch Deployment Details Pane appears. | | | |



Fig. 314 Patch Deployment Details Pane

2 Double-click **Patch Deployment Console**. The Patch Deployment Console appears.



Fig. 315 BindView Patch Deployment Console

| Viewing Patch Assessment Query Results | | Once you have used the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows to perform a Patch Assessment query, you can use the Patch Deployment Console to view the query results and deploy patches. |
|--|--|---|
| | | To view Patch Assessment Query Results |
| | | 1 If it's not open, start the Patch Deployment Console and click |

the Expand Listing icon () in the **Today's Scans** or **Recent Items** areas.



The area expands to display the contents of the list.



2 Click any scan to display the results of the query.

The details pane displays the results of the query.

| SindView Patch Deployment | | | | | | | | × |
|---|--|--|--|--------------------------|--|--|--------------------------|-------------|
| File View Patches Machines Tools Help | | | | | | | | |
| 📡 🗙 👌 🔎 🥑 🛃 📔 🖉 | 📰 🔝 🔎 Download Cente | r: English | - 🔁 | | | | | |
| Patch Groups | 4/21/2004 10:03:41 AM Summary by Patch DOC-CORN-WXP DOC-WHEAT-W2K3 | Computer COC-CORN-WXP COC-WHEAT-W2K3 | IP Address 10.200.10.99 10.200.10.57 | Domain GRAIN GRAIN | Language us-en | 52 9 23 8 | 2 1 | 0 0 0 |
| SQL Server Web Server | | | | | | | | |
| Today's Scans 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 | 👰 Scan Summary | • | | | | | | • |
| ¹/21/2004 10:01:40 AM (1) ¹/421/2004 9:47:17 AM (2) ¹/421/2004 9:38:44 AM (2) ¹/4/21/2004 9:37:56 AM (1) ¹/4/21/2004 9:37:50 AM (2) ¹/4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ¹/4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ¹/4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ¹/4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (2) ¹/4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ¹/4/41/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ¹/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/41/ | Machines Scanned: Machines Not Scan Missing Service Pa Missing Patches: 11 Patches Found: 62 | 2 ned: 0 cks: 3 7 | | Scan [| Date: 4/21/2004 1 XML Version Use XML Date: Scanned | 10:03:41 d: 1.1.1. 4/14/2 l By: bvr | AM 998 004 htge | |
| 4/21/2004 9:33:10 AM (2) ↓ 4/21/2004 9:33:32 AM (1) ↓ 4/21/2004 9:33:32 AM (2) ↓ ↓ | 1 | | | | | | | • |

Fig. 317 Patch Deployment Console with Query Results

3 Select **Summary by Patch** to display a summary of the query sorted by patch.

| SindView Patch Deployment | | | | | | _ 🗆 🗙 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--|-----------------------------------|--|---------------|
| File View Patches Machines Tools Help | | | | | | |
| Ş 🗙 👌 🔎 🥑 🛐 📔 🧱 | 🌉 😥 🖉 Download Cent | er: English | 🔁 | | | |
| | 2/21/2004 10:03:41 AM | QNumber Item | Product | 🖌 🗶 👍 | 🛛 🚱 🏴 🛕 🎍 | Descrip_ |
| Patch Groups 📀 | Summary by Patch | SP2 .NET F | raNET Framework S | 0 0 1 | PP 4 | .NET F |
| * V. D. LO | | SP3 Office> | VP Office XP SP3 | 0 0 2 | _ <u>P</u> | Office > |
| New Patch Group | | Q329077 MS02-0 | 052 Windows XP Profe | 1 0 0 | - 👷 👷 🚔 | Flaw in |
| SUL Server | | U324096 MS02-0 | 153 Windows XP Profe | 1 0 0 | | Butter L |
| 💊 Web Server | | 0323230 MS024 | 153 WINDOWS AF FIDIE | 1 0 0 | | Cumula |
| | | 0810030 MS02-0 | 169 Windows XP Profe | 1 0 0 | Ğ İ I | Flaw in |
| Tadaula Casas | | Q329390 MS02-0 | 172 Windows XP Profe | 1 0 0 | ğ 🖗 👗 | Uncher |
| | | 0810847 MS03-0 | 104 Internet Explorer 6 | 1 0 0 | <u>A</u> 🕅 A 🖲 | Cumula |
| A/21/2004 10:03:41 AM (2) | | | | | | |
| 4/21/2004 10:03:41 AM (2) | | | | | | |
| A (21 (2004 10:01:40 AM (1) | Patch Details | | Windows XP I | Professio | onal Flaw in | |
| A/21/2004 10:01:40 AM (1) | | | Java VM JDBC | Classes | Could Allov | v 🛛 |
| ■ 4/21/2004 0:47:17 AM (2) | Add | Po | Code Executio | n (Q329 | 077) | |
| ¥/21/2004 9:47:17 AM (2) | | | | | • | |
| 4/21/2004 9:38:44 AM (2) | Comments | | Bulletin ID: MS02 | -052 | | |
| 4/21/2004 9:37:56 AM (1) | Add /Edit Comment | | Microsoft Knowle | dge Base A | rticle: 0329077 | |
| ▲ 4/21/2004 9:37:01 AM (2) | | | | 2 | 2 | |
| 🛓 4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) | | | Summarv | | | |
| 🖹 4/21/2004 9:35:18 AM (2) | | | A new patch for the Micr | osoft VM is ava | ailable, which elimina | ites |
| 🖹 4/21/2004 9:34:32 AM (1) | | | two security vulnerabiliti | ies. The attack | vectors for both wou | ıld |
| 🚡 4/21/2004 9:33:32 AM (2) 🚽 | | | likely be the same. An a | ttacker would I | likely create a web p duulporability, and c | age ithor |
| | | | host it on a web page or | send it to a us | er as an HTML mail. | The |
| Deployment Templates | | | first vulnerability involve | es the Java Dat | abase Connectivity (| JDBC) |
| | | | classes, which provide to connect to and use data | from a wide va | ow Java applications ariety of data source | to s. |
| | | | ranging from flat files to | SQL Server da | atabases. The vulner | ability |
| Recent Items 🧤 🌚 | | | results because of a flav | v in the way the | e classes vet a reque Ms system Although | st to |
| | | | classes do perform chec | ks that are des | signed to ensure that | only |
| Patch Information 🛞 | | | authorized applets can l | evy such a requ | uest, it's possible | to |
| | | | spoor this check by malf thereby enable an attack | orming the req ker to load and | uest in a particular v execute any DIT or | /ay, the ▼ |
| | Patch Info Mis | sing Installed | ., | | , | |
| 89 Item(s) | , , , | | | | | |
| | | | | | | //, |

Fig. 318 Patch Deployment Console with Patch Summary

4 Select a machine name to display a summary of that machine's results.

| Sind View Patch Deployment | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| File View Patches Machines Tools Help | | | | | | | | |
| 🕼 🗙 🔝 🔎 🧶 🎇 🎇 🖉 Download Center: English 🔽 😋 | | | | | | | | |
| Patch Groups 🛞 | 4/21/2004 10:03:41 AM Summary by Patch DOC-CORN-WXP | Item QNumber | C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C | | | | | |
| 🌾 New Patch Group 🧇 SQL Server 🧼 Web Server | DOCAVHEATAV2K3 Patch Found Patch Found Patch Found Patch Found | MS03-020 Q818529 MS03-021 Q819639 MS03-023 Q823559 MS03-026 Q823980 MS03-026 Q819596 | | | | | | |
| Today's Scans 🙀 🛞 | Dischine Summary | | <u>~</u> | | | | | |
| ▲ 4/21/2004 10:03:41 AM (2) ▲ 4/21/2004 10:03:41 AM (2) ▲ 4/21/2004 10:01:40 AM (1) | 😨 Scan Machine: DOC-WHEAT-W2K3 (us-e | n) 🗄 | A Missing Service Packs = 1 | | | | | |
| 4/21/2004 10:01:40 AM (1) 4/21/2004 9:47:17 AM (2) | Domain: GRAIN | | 🗙 Patches Missing = 8 ✔ Patches Found = 21 | | | | | |
| 4/21/2004 9:38:44 AM (2) 4/21/2004 9:37:56 AM (1) 4/21/2004 9:37:01 AM (2) | Comments: None Add/Edit Comment | | | | | | | |
| ▲ 4/21/2004 9:36:15 AM (1) ▲ 4/21/2004 9:35:18 AM (2) ▲ 1/21/2004 9:35:18 AM (2) | Installed Products | YPatches | K Missing 👍 Missing Service Patches Packs | | | | | |
| | .NET Framework 1.1 Gold | 0 | 0 0 | | | | | |
| | Access 2002 SP2 | 0 | 1 0 | | | | | |
| Deployment Templates 🛞 | Internet Explorer 6.0 for Windows Server 2003 Gold | 5 | 0 0 | | | | | |
| Recent Items 🖓 🍥 | Internet Information Services 6.0 Gold | 0 | 0 0 | | | | | |
| Patch Information | MDAC 2.8 Gold | 1 | 0 0 | | | | | |
| | Office XP SP2 | 0 | 2 1 | | | | | |
| | Outlook 2002 SP2 | 0 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| 36 Item(s) | | | | | | | | |

11: Using BindView Patch Deployment 311

Fig. 319 Patch Deployment Console with Machine Summary

The information displayed in the summary pages is identical to the information displayed when you view the guery results in the BindView RMS Console (see "Viewing Patch Assessment Results" on page 294).

Deploying Patches The Patch Deployment Console allows you to deploy selected patches to machines you select, or to deploy all missing patches to machines you select. While the Patch Packaging wizard creates packages that you can then deploy using a third-party tool, the Patch Deployment Console handles packaging and deployment to target computers itself.

To deploy patches using the Patch Deployment Console

- 1 If it's not already running, start the BindView Patch Deployment Console and select a set of Patch Assessment query results to view (Fig. 317 on page 310).
- 2 There are several ways to select the patches to package.

Select One or More To select one or more machines and deploy all missing patches Machines or missing patches by criticality to each machine, click the query results (labeled with the date and time of the query) in the top left pane. A list of all the machines that were scanned as part of the patch assessment query appears. Select one or more machines and right-click. The **Patch Machines** menu appears.

Choose **Deploy Patches to Selected Machines**, then choose All Missing Patches or Based on Criticality and choose a severity level. The **Deployment Configuration** dialog appears (Fig. 320 on page 313).

Deploy One or More To deploy one or more patches to every scanned machine Patches missing the patch or patches, click **Summary by Patch** and select one or more patches in the Patch Assessment Results Details, then right-click. The **Patch** menu appears.

> Choose **Deploy**, then **Selected Patches**. The **Deployment Configuration** dialog appears (Fig. 320 on page 313).

Deploy All Missing To deploy all missing patches to all machines in the Patch Assessment Query Results, click **Summary by Patch**. A list of all patches detected and all missing patches appears. Select any patch and right-click. The **Patch** menu appears

312 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

Patches

Choose **Deploy**, then **All Missing Patches** or **Based on Criticality** and choose a severity level. The **Deployment Configuration** dialog appears (Fig. 320).

| Deployment Configuration | | |
|--|--|--|
| Deploy To: | Selected Machines | |
| Deploy How: | Standard 💌 New | |
| PatchPush Tracker IP Address: | 10.200.10.99 | |
| Deploy When: | Install immediately | |
| | C Copy patch(es) to selected machine(s) but do not install | |
| | O Schedule <u>a</u> t: | |
| Do not show this dialog again Details >> Deploy Cancel | | |

Fig. 320 Deployment Configuration Dialog

3 In the **Deployment Configuration** dialog, choose a Deployment Template from the **Deploy How** drop-down list. These templates are similar to, but separate from, the deployment templates used by the Patch Packaging wizard. To create a new Deployment Template, click **New**. The **Deployment Template** dialog appears.

| 🔞 Deployment Template | × |
|--|---|
| Name: | |
| Description: | |
| Options Slow Fast | - |
| Copy speed Wait Seconds before retrying | |
| Remote Dialog | - |
| Show dialog on remote machine during patch deployment | |
| Tjtle: | |
| Caption: | |
| Office Deployment | - |
| Update Microsoft Office clients using patches from | |
| O Administrative Installation Point | |
| Push patches to each machine | |
| Push full-file patches when possible (original media usually not required) Path to original installation media (optional, some patches may fail if not provided): | |
| | |
| Office Install Credentials: Set credentials used to connect to the network resource specified above. | |
| <u>C</u> lear <u>S</u> et | |
| Patch Deployment | - |
| Before During After | |
| □ Shutdown SQL Server □ Backup files for uninstall □ Remove temp files | |
| Shutdown IIS Server | |
| Reboot Options | - |
| C Do not reboot Attempt 2 🚽 shutdowns | |
| Reboot immediately after deployment Wait 60 + seconds before | |
| Warn connected machines before reboot | |
| Save Cancel Close | |

Fig. 321 Deployment Template Dialog

11: Using BindView Patch Deployment 313

| 4 | The Deployment Template dialog allows you to set the options for the deployment. You should enter a name for the new template in the Name field and enter a description in the Description field, then set the options for the deployment. |
|-------------------|---|
| General Options | Name - The deployment template name |
| | Description - A description of deployment template |
| | Copy speed allows you to select how quickly the patches are copied to the remote machine (1 slowest, and 5 fastest). The faster the copy speed, the more network bandwidth used. |
| | Wait seconds before retrying - If a patch copy fails, specify a pause between retries from 0 to 100 seconds. |
| | When Remote dialog is selected, a dialog box appears on the deployment target machine while the deployment is active. You can specify both the title and caption of the dialog box. |
| Office Deployment | Office patches are handled differently from other patches. Office patches require the original CD media. This is because the patches are not complete files. Instead, the patch represents only the differences required to modify the original file with the patched code. |
| | Administrative Installation Point - Administrators can create an Office Administrative Install Point (AIP) and then install Office on client machines from this location. Hotfixes can then be installed to the AIP, and the remote client machines can then be told to "update" their installations from the AIP. The update process really means re-installing all of Office on each machine - everything on the AIP will then get copied down to the remote machine. |
| | The install point is technically nothing more than a network share of the requisite files, with special setup commands. |
| | In the Administrative Installation Point field, enter the full UNC path to the Office AIP MSI file. For example, \\officeserver\office\proplus.msi. Press the Set Credentials button to provide credentials for the remote machine to access the UNC location. |
| | If you specify an AIP for Office patches, then when you choose to install any Office patches using this deployment template the machine being patched will synchronize with the specified Office AIP. |
| | Push patches to each machine - Alternatively, you can choose to directly deploy patches to the remote Office clients. When possible, you should elect to push full-file patches to the remote machines and specify a static location for Office media. Otherwise, not all Office patches will be successfully deployed. |
| | Path to original installation media - Specify a UNC path to the original installation media used to install a specific version of Office. For example \\corpserver\office. Press the Set Credentials button to provide credentials for the remote |

machine to access the UNC location. Office installations may fail unless the remote machine has access to the original installation media.

Patch DeploymentThere are a number of options that can be selected to take
place before, during and after patch deployment. Each option is
discussed in detail.

Before - You can choose to shut down SQL Server and IIS with an option to warn machines connected to a SQL server that the services will be stopped. These services will automatically be shutdown when a SQL or IIS patch is applied to a remote machine regardless of this setting. Use this setting to shut down these services when installing OS or similar hotfixes, particularly if you are planning to reboot the machine after installation.

During - During the deployment, you can require BindView Patch Deployment to back up any files that are modified in order to perform an uninstall if something goes wrong. You can also choose to enable or disable 'Quiet Mode'. Quiet Mode does not present any evidence to the user that the deployment is taking place.

After - After the scan is complete, you can choose to remove any temporary files that were created during the deployment process.

Reboot Options After successfully deploying all patches, you have the option of what to do to the remote system. You can either let it continue running or you can choose to reboot it. If you choose to reboot the deployment target, you can specify the number of reboot attempts (from 1 to 100) as well as the number of seconds to wait between attempts (1-100). Finally, if any clients are connected to the machine, you can indicate that they should be warned before the system is rebooted.

- **5** When you have set the options, click **Save**. The Deployment Template is saved for later reuse.
- 6 Click **Close** to close the **Deployment Template** dialog. The **Deployment Configuration** dialog reappears with the new template selected.

| Deployment Configuration | | | |
|--|--|---------------|--|
| Deploy To: | Selected Machines | | |
| Deploy How: | My Template | ▼ <u>N</u> ew | |
| PatchPush Tracker IP Address: | 10.200.10.99 | • | |
| Deploy When: | Install immediately | | |
| | Copy patch(es) to selected machine(s) but do n | ot install | |
| | Schedule <u>a</u> t: 4 /23/2004 🗾 3 | :45:06 PM | |
| Do not show this dialog again Details >> Deploy Cancel | | | |

Fig. 322 Deployment Configuration Dialog

11: Using BindView Patch Deployment 315

- If you have more than one machine running the BindView Patch Deployment Console, you can choose the IP address of the Patch Deployment Console to use from the **PatchPush Tracker IP Address** drop-down list.
- 8 Choose when to deploy the patches from the **Deploy When** options. When you're ready to proceed, click **Deploy**. You may be prompted to confirm the credentials of the currently logged-on user. Otherwise, the deployment proceeds according to the options you have set. If the deployment takes place immediately, a progress dialog will appear.
- **9** When the deployment is complete, the **BindView PatchPush**® **Tracker** dialog will appear.

| ᅌ Bind¥ia | ew PatchPush™ Tr | acker | | |
|------------|--|---------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| File Optio | ons View Help | | | |
| State | Machine | Description | Scheduled | Status Changed |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | SQL Server 2000.SP3.M503-031 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:16 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Office XP.SP2.M503-036.Q824938 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Windows Server 2003, Standard E | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Office XP.SP2.M503-037.Q822036 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Access 2002.SP2.MS03-038.Q826 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Word 2002.SP2.MS03-050.Q8303 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Excel 2002.SP2.MS03-050.Q8303 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-WHEAT | Outlook 2002.SP2.MS04-009.Q82 | 04/22/04 16:47:03 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Windows XP Professional.SP1.TO | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Office XP.SP2.MS03-036.Q824938 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Windows XP Professional.SP1.MS0 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Office XP.SP2.M503-037.Q822036 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Access 2002.SP2.MS03-038.Q826 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Word 2002.SP2.MS03-050.Q8303 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Excel 2002.SP2.MS03-050.Q8303 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🔷 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Windows XP Professional.SP1.MS0 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:10 |
| 🗢 Info | DOC-CORN-WX | Outlook 2002.SP2.MS04-009.Q82 | 04/22/04 16:47:05 | 04/22/04 16:47:11 |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| • | | | | • |
| Monitor | Monitor: E 🔽 Show Errors 🖾 Show Warnings 🔽 Show Pass 🔽 Show Info | | | |
| No New | Data Total: 17 | Fail: 0 Warn: 0 | Pass: 0 | 16:47:37 |

Fig. 323 BindView PatchPush Tracker Dialog

10 When you have reviewed the patch deployment status in the PatchPush Tracker dialog, close it, and the deployment is complete.

For additional information on the BindView Patch Deployment Console, please see the BindView Patch Deployment Help.

12 Web Services

In This Chapter

| Understanding Web Services | |
|----------------------------|--|
| Features | |
| Licenses | |
| Requirements | |
| Working with Web Services | |

| Understanding Web Services | Web Services is designed to help Web administrators and information security groups: | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Secure and manage Microsoft IIS and .NET Web servicesDiagnose Web site problemsEnforce security policies | | | | |
| | Web Services helps Web administrators to easily identify unauthorized changes to shared Web files, virtual directories, and Web content. The product provides complete security vulnerability assessment and analysis of the following Web server components: | | | | |
| | SecurityConfiguration settingsNon-essential software | | | | |
| | Installed updates, patches, and hotfixes System level resource usage Network intrusion vulnerability | | | | |
| | Web Services is built into the bv-Control for Windows product with availability based on having specific Web Services licenses. It is installed when you install the bv-Control for Windows product and its operational components: | | | | |
| | BindView RMS® Console Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS) bv-Config Utility | | | | |
| | BindView Support ServicesQuery Service | | | | |
| Features | Using the Web Services data sources offers capabilities that: | | | | |
| | Ensure high-level review of problem status through baseline and analysis reports. | | | | |
| | Offer the ability to identify configuration errors, rogue servers, and any inappropriate access control issues. | | | | |
| | Provide security and management information for your enterprise Web server environment including analysis of virtual directories, files, shares, and permissions. | | | | |
| | • Enable administrators to pinpoint symptoms of dangerous viruses or worms within Microsoft .NET assemblies. | | | | |
| | • Deliver a central console that makes it easy for current database information to be shared across the enterprise. | | | | |
| | Offer a variety of easily understood pre-defined query reports along with the option for users to define and configure their own reports. | | | | |

318 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

| Licenses | Licenses are an integral part of the Web Services functionality. The Web Services-specific data sources will only be visible if you have the appropriate Web Services licenses installed. | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| | Licensing for the bv-Control for Windows and Web Services separate for each product. Table 9, "Licenses Needed for Querying Data Sources" indicates what will occur based on the licenses you have installed. | | |
| | Table 9 Licenses Needed for Querying Data Sources | | |
| | Licenses installed | Effect | |
| | bv-Control for Windows and Web Services | All data sources are visible and you can run queries on all data sources. | |
| | bv-Control for Windows only | The Windows data sources are visible and you can run queries on Windows data sources. | |
| | Web Services only | All data sources are visible but you can only run queries on Web Services data sources. | |
| Requirements | To use Web Services, you must meet all the system requirements for the BindView RMS Console and bv-Control for Windows. | | |
| | This section describes the s Web Services only. | ystem requirements for bv-Control for | |
| Web Services | Microsoft Windows 2000 Server or .Net Servers Microsoft Internet Information Server (IIS) v5.0 or later BindView RMS Console v7.20 SP1 | | |
| | Web Services will <i>not</i> run on Windows NT 4.0 or IIS v4.0. However, you will be able to report on Windows NT 4.0 and IIS v4.0 computers. | | |
| | IIS must be installed but do | bes not have to be running. | |
| Adding Licenses for Web Services | To use Web Services, you must add the Web Services licenses to be able to run queries on the Web Services data sources. | | |
| | When you add the necessary licenses, the license contains a limited number of unassigned object licenses. These object licenses are automatically assigned when you run a query. The results of the query will only return data for the amount of object licenses that are available. | | |
| | You received your Web Serv ways: | vices license ID in one of the following | |

| | If you are evaluating the product, the license ID is on an Evaluation License diskette. | |
|--|---|--|
| | If you purchased the product, the license ID is in a letter packaged with your bv-Control for Windows and Web Services CD. | |
| | If you are missing, or have lost your license ID, please contact Technical Support: www.bindview.com/support | |
| | 1 Enter the license ID in the text frame beside the Add button, and click Add. If your license information is stored on a disk, click Have Disk. | |
| | If you have multiple license IDs, repeat this Step for each ID. | |
| | Note: You will also need to add the BindView RMS Console license ID. | |
| | | |
| Working with Web Services | The following sections provide information on using Web Services. | |
| Web Services Data Sources | Web Services data sources are only visible if you have the Web Services licenses. (bv-Control for Windows data sources are always visible.) For information on Web Services licenses, see "Licenses" on page 319. | |
| | ADSI interfaces are used to collect most of the information from Web Services resources. The following data sources are available with Web Services: | |
| | .NET CLR Performance Statistics | |
| | .NET Global Assembly Cache | |
| | IIS Computers | |
| | IIS Virtual Directories | |
| | IIS Web Content Permissions | |
| | IIS Web Sites | |
| | IIS WWW Service Master Properties | |
| <i>.NET CLR Performance Statistics</i> | By scoping on the .NET CLR (Common Language Runtime) Performance Statistics data source, you can report on machines in your environment with .NET Runtime installed. You can scope on all machines in the domain or only on a particular machine in the domain. | |
| | This data source retrieves .NET Runtime configuration information including: | |
| | JIT data including standard JIT failures | |
| | Remoting data including total remote calls | |
| | Security data including total runtime and number of link time | |

320 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

checks

- Versions of .NET runtime installed (list)
- **.NET Global Assembly Cache** By scoping on the .NET Global Assembly Cache data source, it allows you to report on machines in your environment with .NET Runtime installed. You can scope on all machines in the domain or only on a particular machine in the domain.

This data source retrieves information about .NET Runtime configuration including:

- · Assembly type
- Version number

IIS Computers By scoping on the IIS Computers data source, you can report on machines in your environment with IIS installed. You can scope on all machines in the domain or only on a particular machine in the domain.

This data source retrieves IIS-related information including:

- IIS install path
- IIS major and minor version
- IIS Web sites (list)

Note: In order to run IIS queries, IIS must be installed but does *not* have to be running.

IIS Virtual Directories By scoping on the IIS Virtual Directories data source, you can report on virtual directories and files. With this data source, you can scope by:

- All virtual directories for a website.
- All virtual directories for all websites on a computer.
- All virtual directories on all machines in the Domain.

This data source enables you to drill down into the WWW Service-(containing website information) and Virtual Directory-level directories to collect more detailed information on your IIS-related data.

IIS Web ContentBy scoping on the IIS Web Content Permissions data source, you
can report on information, such as permissions, on virtual
directories and files. With this data source, you can scope to:

- All virtual directories for a website.
- All virtual directories for all websites on a computer.
- All virtual directories on all machines in the Domain.

This data source enables you to drill down into the WWW Service-(containing website information) and Virtual Directory-level directories to collect more detailed information on your IIS-related data.

IIS Web SitesBy scoping on the IIS Web Sites data source, you can query
information on any machines in your environment that have IIS

installed, and are in domains or workgroups that have query engines installed.

This data source allows you to report information such as configuration settings and log settings on the following IIS-hosted websites in your environment:

- A specific website
- All websites on a computer
- All websites on all computers in a domain

When scoping to a specific website, you may drill down to the website name or manually enter the Domain or workgroup name, machine name, and Web Site instance using the Advanced Scopes option.

The Web Site instance is a unique identifier that is used to distinguish the website, since multiple websites may exist with the same user-friendly name. The Web site instance is displayed in the metabase and as part of the ADSI path.

IIS WWW Service
Master PropertiesBy scoping on the IIS WWW Service Master Properties data source,
you can report on machines with IIS installed in your environment.
You can scope on all machines in the domain or only on a particular
machine in the domain.

This data source retrieves information about IIS configuration at the service level, such as:

- Authentication
- Home directory
- Logging
- Performance data

Caution: On .NET Servers running IIS 6.0, the Ratings-type fields *always* report [None]. However, on .NET Servers running IIS 5.0 and 5.1, the fields report correctly.

13 Uninstalling Program Components Using bv-Config Utility

| In This Chapter | Uninstalling the Product | 324 |
|-----------------|--|-----|
| - | Removing a Query Engine | 324 |
| | Removing a Support Service | 326 |
| | Removing an Enterprise Configuration Service | 328 |
| | Viewing Uninstall Details | 331 |
| | | |

13: Uninstalling Program Components Using bv-Config Utility 323

| Uninstalling the Product | If you want to remove a Query Engine, the BindView Support Service, or the Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS), you should use the bv-Config utility. | | |
|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| | If y Sup mu Eng eac | ou are removing all program components (Query Engines, oport Services, ECS, and bv-Config utility), each component st be removed in a specific order. You should remove each Query ine tracked by the ECS database you plan to remove first, then h Support Service, then the ECS. | |
| Removing a Query Engine | If you are removing all components (Query Engine, BindView Support Service, and the ECS) from a machine, you should remove the Query Engine service first. | | |
| | Warning: When you uninstall the Query Engine, it will also unin the BindView Support Services without prompting you. | | |
| ► | То | remove a query engine | |
| | 1 | Run the bv-Config utility. | |
| | 2 | From the left-hand component of the bv-Config window, select the domain where the Query Engine you want to remove resides. | |
| | 3 | Select the machine running the Query Engine you want to remove. | |
| | 4 | From the right-hand component of the window, double-click the Uninstall Query Engine option. The bv-Config warning message is displayed. | |
| | | bv-Config Image: Config Co | |
5 Click Yes. The BindView NT Query Engine Service Uninstall dialog appears.



Fig. 324 BindView NT Query Engine Service Uninstall Dialog

The **BindView Uninstall** dialog appears virtually the same whether removing a Query Engine, a Support Service, or an ECS. The difference is in the actions that are displayed beneath the **Uninstall** button when removing each component. Also, when removing a Query Engine, the option to remove a service user account is available.

Optional: Select the Remove Service User Account option.

Caution: If you choose to remove a service user account, a **BVNTUninstall** dialog appears, warning that if any other Query Engine in the domain is using the same service user account as the Query Engine you are removing, the remaining Query Engine(s) using that account will cease to function after the service user account is removed and the service is restarted.

Optional: Select the **Remove Local Groups** option.

If you have a Query Engine installed on a Domain Controller and the groups are shared, you can remove the last local group from the QE.

- **6** Click **Uninstall**. The uninstall program proceeds to remove the following Query Engine components:
 - Query Engine from the SCM
 - Query Engine Files
 - Registry Settings and Keys
 - Service User Account (if selected)

When the uninstall is complete, it will state **Finished!** at the end of the dialog box.

| | BindView NT Query Engine Service Uninstall will remove the service and all components on the target computer. Enter the computer to perform the uninstall on and press Uninstall. ECS ADELOSSA-TEST2 | OK Cancel Help |
|--|---|----------------------|
| | Target Computer VADELOSSA-TEST2 Remove Service User Account Service User Account | Details Uninstall |
| | Details Details Details Removing the Query Engine from the Service Control Manage Removing the Query Engine Files Deleting Registry Settings and Keys Deleting the Service User Account Finished! | ſ |

- Fig. 325 BindView Uninstall Dialog Uninstall Query Engine Service
- 7 Click OK.

It is possible that the uninstall completed successfully but was unable to remove some of the service components. If this is the case, you will receive a message.

8 Click OK.

If you would like more information about the details of the uninstall, see "To view details of the query engine uninstall" on page 331.

| BYNTUninstall X | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | Uninstall completed. application. | Some elements could not be removed. | You should manually remove items related to the |
| | | OK | |

9 From the BindView Uninstall message, click OK. The BindView Uninstall message closes, and all Query Engine options are removed from the right-hand component of the bv-Config window.

- **1** Run the bv-Config utility.
- 2 From the left-hand component of the bv-Config window, select the domain where the Support Service you want to remove resides.
- **3** Select the machine running the Support Service.
- 326 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

4 From the right-hand component of the window, double-click the Uninstall BindView Support Service option, or right-click on the machine to display a menu that will allow you to remove the service. A bv-Config Warning message appears.

| bv-Co | nfig NOSadmin 🛛 🔀 |
|-------|--|
| | WARNING: Uninstalling the BirdView Support Service from a Domain Controller will effect the accuracy of the 'Last Logon' field in the User's database. Continue? |
| | Yes No |

Click **Yes** if you wish to continue. If you click Yes, the BindView Uninstall dialog appears.

5 The **BindView Support Service Uninstall** dialog appears virtually the same whether removing a Query Engine, a BindView Support Service, or an ECS. The difference is in the actions that display beneath the **Uninstall** button when removing each component. Also, when removing a Query Engine, the option to remove the service user account is available.

| | BindView Bindview Support Service Uninstall will remove service and all components on the target computer. Ente computer to perform the uninstall on and press Uninstall. ECS ADELDSSA-TEST2 Target Computer VADELDSSA-TEST2 | the OK Cancel Help |
|--|--|--------------------------|
| | Remove Service User Account Remove Local Group(s) Details Removing the BindView Support Service from the Service Removing the BindView Support Service Files Deleting Registry Settings and Keys Deleting the Service User Account Finished! | Uninstall |

Fig. 326 BindView Support Service Uninstall Dialog

- **6** Click **Uninstall**. The uninstall program proceeds to remove the following Support Service components:
 - BindView Support Service from SCM
 - BindView Support Service Files
 - Registry Settings and Keys

After the BindView Support Service uninstall is complete, the BindView Support Service Uninstall dialog reappears, similar to the dialog shown in Fig. 327.

| | BindView Bindview Support Service Uninstall will remove th service and all components on the target computer. Enter the computer to perform the uninstall on and press Uninstall. ECS ADELOSSA-TEST2 Target Computer | he OK Cancel Help Details |
|--|---|------------------------------------|
| | VADELOSSA-TEST2 Remove Service User Account Removing the BindView Support Service from the Service 0 Removing the BindView Support Service Files Deleting Registly Settings and Keys Deleting the Service User Account Finished | Uninstall Control |

Fig. 327 BindView Support Service Uninstall Dialog

It is possible that the uninstall completed successfully but was unable to remove some of the service components. If this is the case, you will receive a message.

- 7 Click **OK**. If you would like more information about the uninstall details, see "Viewing Uninstall Details" on page 331.
- 8 Click **OK**. The **BindView Uninstall** dialog closes, and the option to remove the BindView Support Service is removed from the right-hand component of the bv-Config utility window.

Removing an Enterprise Configuration Service

After removing the Query Engine service(s) and the BindView Support Service(s) tracked by the Enterprise Configuration Service (ECS) database you want to remove, you can then remove the ECS. Just as when you installed the ECS, a copy of the bv-Config utility was automatically installed. The bv-Config utility is also removed automatically when you uninstall the ECS.

To remove an ECS

- **1** Open the bv-Config window.
- **2** From the left-hand component of the bv-Config window, select the domain where the ECS you want to remove resides.

3 From the **Actions** menu, select **Uninstall ECS**. The **Select Computer** dialog appears.

| Select Computer | | × |
|------------------|------------------|--------------|
| | | OK |
| Computer: | | Cancel |
| Select Computer: | | <u>H</u> elp |
| 🛃 MAILADMIN | | |
| PANGUYEN-MAIN | | |
| ANGUYEN-TEST | | |
| | | |
| KBLACK | | |
| б квw2к | | |
| MATEST01P | Ed's Primary Exc | hange Se 💌 |
| | | |

Fig. 328 Select Computer Dialog

- **4** Select the machine where the ECS you want to remove is installed.
- **5** Click **OK**. The bv-Config message displays a warning that the Console may not be able to communicate with any of the Query Engines if the ECS is removed.

| bv-Config 🛛 🛛 | | |
|---------------|---|--|
| ₹ | WARNING: Uninstalling the BindView Enterprise Configuration Service can prevent the Console's NT Module from working. Continue? | |
| | | |

6 Click **Yes**. Another bv-Config message displays a warning that the ECS which the bv-Config utility is currently using is about to be removed, and confirms deletion of the ECS.

| bv-Config 🛛 🕅 | | | | |
|---------------|--|--|--|--|
| ⚠ | WARNING: The Enterprise Configuration Service that the by-Config is communicating with is about to be uninstalled. Uninstalling the Enterprise Configuration Service will cause the by-Config to be closed. Uninstall the Enterprise Configuration Service? | | | |
| | | | | |

7 Click **Yes** to remove the ECS.

The **BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Uninstall** dialog appears.

| | BindView NT Query Engine Service Uninstall will remove th service and all components on the target computer. Enter th computer to perform the uninstall on and press Uninstall. ECS ADELOSSA-TEST2 Target Computer \\ADELOSSA-TEST2 | e OK Cancel Help |
|--|---|------------------------|
| | Remove Service User Account Remove Local Group(s) Details Removing the Query Engine from the Service Control Manae Removing the Query Engine Files Deleting Registry Settings and Keys Deleting the Service User Account Finished | Uninstall |

Fig. 329 BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Uninstall Dialog

The **BindView Enterprise Configuration Service Uninstall** dialog appears virtually the same whether removing a Query Engine, a BindView Support Service, or an ECS. The difference is in the actions that are displayed beneath the **Uninstall** button when removing each component. Also, when removing an ECS, the option to remove the service user account is disabled.

8 Click **Uninstall**. The **BVNTUninstall** message appears, warning you that if you remove the ECS, you may be leaving Query Engine services installed that can only be removed directly from the machine where they reside.

This message also reminds you that the ECS should be the last piece to be removed.



9 Read the message carefully, and click **Yes** to remove the ECS.

The ECS components being removed appear beneath the **Uninstall** button. They are as follows:

- Enterprise Configuration Service from SCM
- Enterprise Configuration Service Files
- Registry Settings and Keys

After the uninstall program finishes removing the ECS, the dialog displays **Finished!** as the last item in the component list.

Note: The **BVNTUninstall** message is displayed whether or not the ECS was removed successfully.

If the uninstall completed successfully but was unable to remove some of the ECS components, and you would like more information about the uninstall, see"Viewing Uninstall Details" on page 331.

- 10 Click OK. The BindView Uninstall dialog appears.
- 11 Click **OK** on the **BindView Uninstall** dialog. After the dialog closes, the bv-Config window also closes, as the utility was removed during the ECS uninstall.

Viewing Uninstall Details

When you remove a bv-Control for Windows component, it is possible that the uninstall will complete successfully but not all of the service components are removed. If this happens, you will receive a message indicating that this has occurred. If you receive this message, you should view the details of the uninstall to determine what components could not be removed, and attempt to remove the components manually.

• To view details of the query engine uninstall

 From the BindView Uninstall dialog, click the Details button to view errors the uninstall program encountered. The Error Details dialog appears similar to the dialog shown in Fig. 330.

| Error Details | × |
|---|---------|
| Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTSetup.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTObjects.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\ECSCommon.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTPC32.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTPC32.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTPC32.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\mvc42u.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\mvc42u.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\mvc42u.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTPUninstall.exe'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTPUninstall.exe'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTUninstall.exe'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTUNINSUBJis.dll'. Error Code: 5 Unable to delete 'C:\ECS\BVNTUNINSUBJis.dl'. Error Code: 5 | |
| ×. | ► OK |

Fig. 330 Error Details Dialog

- 2 Review the errors, and click **OK**. The **BindView Uninstall** dialog appears.
- 3 Click OK on the BindView Uninstall dialog.
- **4** Perform any needed actions to completely remove the service components. This may include removing shared files and folders.

13: Uninstalling Program Components Using bv-Config Utility 331

To be sure that all the files have been removed, view the directories and files using Windows Explorer. The service directory, its subfolders, and all of its files should be removed. If all of those components are not removed, you may simply delete them using Windows Explorer.

Α

Secondary Windows 2000 Installation

When installing bv-Control® for Windows® on a secondary Windows 2000 Domain Controller (DC) that has Active Directory® replicated to it, a **Replication Wait Dialog** appears during the installation process.



Fig. 331 Replication Wait Dialog

The **Replication Wait Dialog** appears because the **BV Console Users** and **BV Console Admin** groups are installed on the primary DC, and the BindView RMS Console cannot be launched on the secondary DC until these groups are replicated through Active Directory.

If you choose not to click the **Cancel** button during the installation process, the dialog will disappear automatically after the groups are replicated. After the replication occurs, the installation process continues and bv-Control for Windows will immediately be ready for use after installation.

If you choose to click the **Cancel** button, the dialog will disappear and the installation process will continue. If you launch the BindView RMS Console before the groups have been replicated, you will receive an "Initial Failed" message in the MMC Console pane and the product will be unusable. If this occurs, simply close MMC and wait for the groups to replicate. Once replication occurs, you will be able to launch the Console.

To verify replication

You can verify if the groups have been replicated by opening the **BindView Properties** dialog. You can get to the **BindView Properties** dialog using the following steps:

- **1** From the computer **Desktop**, right-click **My Computer**.
- 2 Select Manage.

This will launch the **Computer Management Console**.

- **3** Under the Share Folders container, expand the **Shares** folder.
- **4** From the details pane, right-click on the **BindView** share.
- 5 Select **Properties**.

The **BindView Properties** dialog appears (Fig. 332).

6 Select the Share Permissions tab.

| BindView Properties | ? × |
|---|--------------------------|
| General Share Permissions Security | |
| Name Maministrators (Q-UGLI\Administrators) BV Console Users (Q-UGLI\BV Console L S-1-5-21-1078081533-688789844-170853 | Agd Jsers) 37768-1 |
| Permissions: Full Control Change Read | Allow Deny |
| OK | Cancel Apply |

Fig. 332 BindView Properties Dialog

From Fig. 332, you can see that the **BV Console Users** group is already replicated, but the **BV Console Admins** group is not. The string of numbers and dashes under the **BV Console Users** group is a placeholder representing the **BV Console Admins** group waiting to replicate.

• To force replication

Instead of waiting on the Active Directory replication to occur on its own (which can take up to 45 minutes), you can manually force a replication.

- **1** From the Windows **Start** menu, go to **Programs**.
- 2 Select Administrative Tools.
- 3 Select AD Sites and Services.

The AD Sites and Services Console appears.

| M D Sites and Services | | | | - U × |
|---|---|----------------|-------------------|------------|
| ∫ 🙀 ⊆onsole Window Help | | | | _ Ð × |
| $ \underline{Action} \underline{\forall} ew \Leftrightarrow \rightarrow \widehat{\mathbf{c}} \overline{\mathbf{m}} \overleftarrow{\mathbf{X}} \underline{\mathbf{m}}^{\ast} \widehat{\mathbf{c}} \overline{\mathbf{c}} \overline{\mathbf{c}} \underline{\mathbf{c}} \underline{\mathbf{c}}$ | | | | |
| Tree | Name | From Server | From Site | Туре |
| Active Directory Sites and Services [l-caribou- Sites | 👫 <automatically generat<="" td=""><td>L-BREMEN-W2KAS</td><td>Default-First-Sit</td><td>Connection</td></automatically> | L-BREMEN-W2KAS | Default-First-Sit | Connection |
| | | | | <u>·</u> |

Fig. 333 AD Sites and Services Console

- **4** Navigate to the **NTDS Settings** on the secondary DC where bv-Control for Windows was installed (shown in Fig. 333).
- **5** From the details pane, right-click on the connection object.
- 6 Choose **Replicate Now**.

Note: You will be notified if the replication was successful.

Glossary

| ActiveAdmin | BindView feature that allows a user to delete resource objects, historical datasets, or session logs, or to modify resource object attributes. |
|------------------------|---|
| Advanced Scoping | Ability to manually enter machine scope targets using one of several different types of machine scopes. |
| Atomic jobs | Both Master and Slave Query Engines divide jobs into these small pieces for processing. |
| bv-Config | Utility that enables you to view details and modify functions for all Windows machines from a single location in your enterprise. A copy of bv-Config must be installed on the machine where the ECS, QE, and Console are installed. |
| DCA | Data Collection Agent. BindView program used to collect data from the NT network. Default is 6 DCAs per Master and Slave Query Engines. Use the DCA tab of the Query Engine Settings dialog to increase or decrease the number of DCAs per QE (range 1-30) to optimize performance. |
| Distribution Rules | Rules that enable you to control the distribution of queries or data collection from a Master Query Engine to a Slave Query Engine. |
| ECS | Enterprise Configuration Service. A service that maintains a list of Master Query Engines and Slave Query Engines located in your network. The ECS keeps a record of the rules for data collection by tracking which Slave Query Engines report to each Master Query Engine. One ECS is recommended per domain but can be more than one. |
| Master Query Engine | Receives a query from the Console, divides it into smaller jobs and distributes it to the Slave Query Engines. |
| Named Scope | Group of saved scope items associated with a specific data source and Information Server. |
| Slave Query Engine | Automatically installed on the machine where there is an MQE. The SQE gets its jobs from the MQE, breaks them into atomic jobs, then uses DCAs to collect data to fulfill the requirements of these atomic jobs. |
| Support Service | Automatically installed on the machine where you install an ECS and Query Engine Services, as well as on any machine where you kill a process using the bv-Config utility. If installed on a domain controller, it can be used to process last logon cache data collection. |

Sync Master If changes are made to the ECS or Distribution Rules, it may be necessary to use the Sync Master to update the file listed in the Database Path field with a current list of SQE, protocol sequences, and Distribution Rules.

Index

A

Absolute Rule, 201 access rights ActiveAdmin, 237 accessing data export settings, 246 named scopes, 237 Active Directory Objects, 280 ActiveAdmin, 277 accessing, 237, 238 changing resource object attributes, 238 -239 defined, 237 deleting historical datasets, 240 resource objects, 237 - 238 session logs, 240 editing resource object attributes, 238 -239 historical dataset deletion, 240 modifying resource object attributes, 238 -239 resource object attribute edits, 238 - 239 deletion, 237 rights to use, 237 session logs, 240 ActiveAdmin record operations, 279 Adding Connection Database, 132 **Distribution Rules** Manually, 204 Using the Wizard, 208 Licenses, 36 Product Licenses, 36 adding fields, 224 filters, 225 - 227 licenses, 319 scope, 228 sort fields, 227 Adding Users, 38 Additional Security Settings, 187 Administrative Shares, 283 Administrative Shares Selection, 283 Advanced Scopes, 265 Advanced Security, 186 Advanced Security Settings, 186

Advanced Tab, 185 Advanced User Cache Options, 167 Analysis Options, 281 appending files export files, 246

В

Bandwidth Restrictions, 198 Bandwidth Throttling, 198 baseline creating, 242 - 243 options dialog, 242 overview, 241 requirement, 241 baselined dataset, 241 BindView RMS Console system requirements, 28 BindView Support Service, 119 bv-Config Accessing, 81 bv-Control for Web Services data sources, 320 description of, 318 features, 318 licenses, adding, 319 system requirements, 319

С

Cache Network, 85, 96 User, 86, 98, 112 changing resource object attributes, 238 – 239 chart format histogram style, 259 labels, 260 legend, 260, 261 series style, 259 titles, 261 chart view accessing the feature for, 259 Collecting Last Logon data, 169 Comma Separated Values (.csv), 268 Communication Settings, 284 compared dataset, 241 Computer Cache Cache Tab Setup, 163 Setting Update Schedule, 164

Computer Group Rule, 201 Computer Groups generated from Active Directory, 217 configuring dynamic indexing, 229 Information Server export settings, 247 Information Server export settings, 247 Confirm File Deletion, 54 Connection Database, 133 Adding, 132 Copying, 135 Modifying, 134 Removing, 134 Renaming, 133 Settings, 133 Console exporting from, 244 post process command execution, 251 -252 constant prefix, 283 Copying Connection Database, 135 Create a Scope File, 270 CreateScopeFile.exe, 268

D

data source adding to a guery definition, 223 available fields of, 224 defined, 223 fields included in, 224 selecting for query definition, 223 data sources for by-Control for Web Services, 320 data storage named scope, 230 dataset defined, 232 deleting, 235 retrieval time of, 228 saving to query items, 235 viewing, 235 DCA Tab, 169 default dynamic index settings, 229 post process commands, 251 Default Group, 216 Default group, 201 Default Scope, 264 deleting data historical datasets, 240

session logs, 240 deleting resource objects, 237 delta dataset, 242 - 243 Demoting a Master Query Engine, 219 Dialog Book, 235 Dialog Pages, 286 Disk Space Settings, 284 Distribution Rules, 201 Adding Manually, 204 Using the Wizard, 208 Manually Adding a Computer Group Rule, 207 Manually Adding a Wildcard Rule, 205 Manually Adding an Absolute Rule, 204 Regular Expressions, 202 Removing, 215 Rule Precedence, 204 Rule Type, 201 Setting the Default Group, 216 Viewing Rule Results, 216 dynamic indexing, 229

Ε

ECS Installing, 72 ECS Tab, 191 Setting the ECS Location, 192 Sync Master, 193 editable fields, 238 Editing ActiveAdmin fields, 278 editing resource object attributes, 238 - 239 Effective Permissions, 281 Enable SQE->MQE file transfers, 187 enterprise system requirements for installation, 28 Error Logging Tab, 180 Event Logging Tab, 173 Configuring Event Selections, 174 Selecting Events, 173 Excluding Scopes, 274 export file appending files, 246 Export Query Engine Settings, 198 export settings accessing, 246, 248 appending export files, 246 applying saved settings, 248 default, 247 global default, 246, 247 hierarchy for default settings, 246 Information Server default, 246, 247 query binder default, 246 – 247 settings item, 248

340 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

sharing, 246 storage location, 246 user default, 246, 247 exporting overview, 244 prerequisites, 245 to a disk file, 245 expression list, 227

F

features, 318 fields, 224 adding, 224 appearing in chart, 259 available fields list, 224 editable, 238 list of, 224 filter specification, 222 filter term, 225 adding, 225 - 227 grouping, 227 modifying, 227 removing, 227 Firewall exception registration, 188 Firewall Options, 188

G

Generate Site Based Distribution Rules, 218 global default export settings, 246, 247 grid, 232 grid toolbar, 234 grid view accessing ActiveAdmin, 238, 239, 240 Group Security Settings, 189 grouping filter terms, 227

Η

Health & Status Check, 264, 285 hierarchy for default settings export, 246 histogram chart, 259 historical dataset, 241 baselined dataset, 241, 242 compared dataset, 241, 242 deleting, 240 delta dataset, 241

Ι

icons

ActiveAdmin, 238 dynamic index folder, 229 query binder, 223 IIS Computers, 321 **IIS Virtual Directories**, 321 IIS Web Content Permissions, 321 IIS Web Sites, 321 **IIS WWW Service Master Properties**, 322 Information Server configuring with export settings, 247 exporting from, 244 global default export settings, 246, 247 named scopes stored on, 230 post process command execution, 251 system requirements, 28 Information Server and Query Engine RPC Connection, 188 installation system requirements, 28 Installing BindView Support Service, 120 Master Query Engine, 80 Slave Query Engine, 94 IP Computer Groups, 217

J

Jobs Tab, 184

L

label series chart, 260 Last Logon Cache, 167 Advanced Dialog, 167 legend, 260, 261 License agreement, 33 licenses adding, 319 linking datasets to query binders, 235

Μ

machine name prefix, 283 Machine Verify Report, 90 Manually Adding a Wildcard Rule, 205 Manually Adding an Absolute Rule, 204 Master/Slave Communication, 188 Master/Slave IS Communication Protocol, 188 MMC, 40 modify resource object attributes, 238 – 239 Moving Active Directory Objects, 280 MQE/SQE Data Transfer, 188 MQE/SQE File Transfer Communication, 188 MQE/SQE Security Settings, 186

Ν

named scope adding to query definition, 230, 231 defined, 230 linking to query definition, 230 removing, 231 Named Scopes, 274 Network Caching Setting Up, 85, 96 Update Interval, 85, 97, 112 New Task List button, 249

0

Options Tab, 176 Setting the Reporting Mode, 177

Ρ

Password Analysis Tab, 179 Password Security Settings, 191 Performing the silent installation, 106 Personal folder, 231, 234 post process commands default, 251 defined, 251 query task defaults, 251 Pre-Defined Query Binders, 286 Promoting a Slave Query Engine, 219 Proxy Queries, 187

Q

query accessing the feature, 223 components, 222 grid toolbar, 234 reducing the processing time of, 228 results, 233 running, 232 Query Binder accessing, 231 default export settings, 247 linking datasets to, 235 – 237 saving, 231 query definition adding filter, 225 scope, 228

data source included in, 223 resource objects selected in, 223, 228 scope, 228 Query Engine Installation Master, 80 Slave, 94 Settings Distribution Rules, 201 Uninstall, 324 Query Engine Settings Accessing, 160 Advanced Tab, 185 DCA Tab, 169 Demoting a Master Query Engine, 219 Distribution Rules, 201 ECS Tab, 191 Error Logging Tab, 180 Event Logging Tab, 173 Jobs Tab, 184 Options Tab, 176 Password Analysis Tab, 179 Promoting Slave Query Engines, 219 Security Tab, 189 Sessions Tab, 193 Settings Tabs, 160 Query Engine/IS Communication Method, 188 query items, sharing, 246 Query Job Security, 187 Query Options dialog running gueries, 233 saving query binders, 231 query task halting, 235 reduce processing time, 228 stop processing, 235

R

record displayed on histogram chart, 259 series chart, 259 Regular expressions, 202 Removing bv-Config, 328 bv-Control for Windows, 54 Connection Database, 134 Distribution Rules, 215 Enterprise Configuration Service, 328 Query Engine, 136 report, 232 requirements system, 319 Rerun Query button, 234

342 bv-Control for Windows User Guide

resource object changing attributes of, 238 – 239 deleting, 237 – 238 editing attributes of, 238 – 239 modifying, 238 – 239 querying, 223, 228 reducing the number queried, 228 Risk Assessment and Control folder, 231, 234 running tasks ActiveAdmin, 237 – 238, 239 – 240 query, 232 scheduling for unattended processing, 253

S

saving datasets, 235 query definition, 231 scheduling task lists, 253 scope defined, 228 dynamic indexing, 229 item, 228 named, 230 reducing display time of items, 229 removing, 231 specification feature, 222 Scope File Generator, 273 Scope File Generator Application, 273 Scope Files, 268 Searching for machines to include in a Scope, 266 Security Tab, 189 Group Security, 189 Password Security, 191 selecting data source, 223 series chart, 259 session log deleting from Information Server, 240 Sessions Tab, 193 Altering Session Settings, 194 Setting IP Address Restrictions, 194 Setting Up Computer Cache, 163 Last Logon Cache, 167 Query Engine Service Account, 85, 112 User Cache, 165 Settings Connection Database, 133 ECS Location, 130 Silent Upgrade, 106 Silently installing a Query Engine, 104 Silenty Upgrading Query Engines, 106

Site Based Distribution Rules, 217 sort fields adding, 227 modifying, 228 removing, 228 storage of data named scope, 230 Support Service, 119 Sync Master, 193 system requirements, 28, 319

Т

Target Computer Computer Cache, 165 User Cache, 167 task lists creating, 249, 252 default settings, 251 post process commands, 251 processing, 252 running, 252 scheduling, 253 Task Scheduler, 253 task status dialog, 235 Toggle Sort button, 228

U

Understanding by-Control for Windows, 21 Understanding Queries, 264 Uninstall bv-Control for Windows, 52 Update Interval Network Caching, 85, 97, 112 User Caching, 86, 98, 112 Update Schedule Computer Cache, 164 User Cache, 166 User Cache Cache Tab Setup, 165 Installation Setup, 86, 98, 112 Setting Update Schedule, 166 user default export settings, 246 user properties dynamic index settings, 230 export, 247 Using Scope Files to create an Advanced Scope, 266

V

Verifying Query Engine Connection, 136 view types report, 232 Viewing Distribution Rule Results, 216

W

Web Services Licenses, 319 Web Services Requirements, 319 Wildcard Rule, 201